



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|  |           |  |
|--|-----------|--|
| <b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b><br><b>C12P 21/08, 21/04, A61K 39/395, 39/42,</b><br><b>C12N 1/21, A01N 31/08</b>  | <b>A1</b> | <b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 96/19584</b><br><b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 27 June 1996 (27.06.96)  |
| <b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US95/16718<br><b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 21 December 1995 (21.12.95)<br><br><b>(30) Priority Data:</b><br>08/363,276                      22 December 1994 (22.12.94)      US<br><br><b>(71) Applicant:</b> MOUNT SINAI SCHOOL OF MEDICINE OF<br>THE CITY UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK [US/US]; One<br>Gustave L. Levy Place, New York, NY 10029-6574 (US).<br><br><b>(72) Inventors:</b> BONA, Constantin; 333 E. 55th Street, New York,<br>NY 10022 (US). ZAGHOUBANI, Habib; Apartment 31, 301<br>Cheshire Drive, Knoxville, TN 37919 (US).<br><br><b>(74) Agents:</b> CLARK, Richard, S. et al.; Brumbaugh, Graves,<br>Donohue & Raymond, 30 Rockefeller Plaza, New York,<br>NY 10112 (US). |           | <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AU, CA, JP, European patent (AT, BE,<br>CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT,<br>SE).<br><br><b>Published</b><br><i>With international search report.</i> |
| <b>(54) Title:</b> CHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING ANTIGEN BINDING SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES<br><br><b>(57) Abstract</b><br><br>The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site. The chimeric antibodies may be produced by replacing at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule with the desired epitope or antigen binding site such that the functional capabilities of the epitope and the parent immunoglobulin are retained. The chimeric antibodies of the invention may be used to enhance an immune response against pathogens and tumor cells in subjects in need of such treatment.   |           |  |

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

|    |                          |    |                                       |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|--------------------------|
| AT | Austria                  | GB | United Kingdom                        | MR | Mauritania               |
| AU | Australia                | GE | Georgia                               | MW | Malawi                   |
| BB | Barbados                 | GN | Guinea                                | NE | Niger                    |
| BE | Belgium                  | GR | Greece                                | NL | Netherlands              |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | HU | Hungary                               | NO | Norway                   |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | IE | Ireland                               | NZ | New Zealand              |
| BJ | Benin                    | IT | Italy                                 | PL | Poland                   |
| BR | Brazil                   | JP | Japan                                 | PT | Portugal                 |
| BY | Belarus                  | KE | Kenya                                 | RO | Romania                  |
| CA | Canada                   | KG | Kyrgyzstan                            | RU | Russian Federation       |
| CF | Central African Republic | KP | Democratic People's Republic of Korea | SD | Sudan                    |
| CG | Congo                    | KR | Republic of Korea                     | SE | Sweden                   |
| CH | Switzerland              | KZ | Kazakhstan                            | SI | Slovenia                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | LI | Liechtenstein                         | SK | Slovakia                 |
| CM | Cameroon                 | LK | Sri Lanka                             | SN | Senegal                  |
| CN | China                    | LU | Luxembourg                            | TD | Chad                     |
| CS | Czechoslovakia           | LV | Latvia                                | TG | Togo                     |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | MC | Monaco                                | TJ | Tajikistan               |
| DE | Germany                  | MD | Republic of Moldova                   | TT | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| DK | Denmark                  | MG | Madagascar                            | UA | Ukraine                  |
| ES | Spain                    | ML | Mali                                  | US | United States of America |
| FI | Finland                  | MN | Mongolia                              | UZ | Uzbekistan               |
| FR | France                   |    |                                       | VN | Viet Nam                 |
| GA | Gabon                    |    |                                       |    |                          |

## Description

### CHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING ANTIGEN BINDING SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES

#### 1. Introduction

The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site. The chimeric antibodies may be produced by replacing at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule with the desired epitope or antigen binding site such that the functional capabilities of the epitope and the parent immunoglobulin are retained. The chimeric antibodies of the invention may be used to enhance an immune response against pathogens or tumor cells in subjects in need of such treatment.

5

#### 2. Background Of The Invention

##### 2.1. The Immune response

Mammals, including man, possess the ability to mount an immune response as a defense against pathogens from the environment as well as against aberrant cells, such as tumor cells, which develop internally. The immune response is the result of complex interactions between a variety of cells and factors, but has two main components: a cellular component, in which cells directly attack an offending agent (bearing an antigen) and a humoral component, in which antibody molecules bind specifically to the antigen and aid in its elimination.

The primary cells involved in producing the immune response are lymphocytes, of which there are two principal classes, B cells and T cells. Antibodies are produced by B cells. A mature B cell which specializes

-2-

in the production of antibody molecules is known as a plasma cell.

Mature T cells have been classified into four subpopulations based on the different tasks they perform. These subpopulations include (1) helper T cells ( $T_h$ ), which are required for promoting or enhancing B cell antibody production; (2) cytotoxic (or cytolytic) T lymphocytes (CTL), which directly kill their target cells by cell lysis; (3) suppressor T cells ( $T_s$ ), which suppress or down-regulate immunological reactions; and (4) T lymphocytes which participate in delayed type hypersensitivity reactions ( $T_{h1}$ ).

These different subpopulations of T cells express a variety of cell surface proteins, some of which are termed "marker proteins" because they are characteristic of particular subpopulations. For example, most  $T_h$  cells express the cell surface CD4 protein, whereas most CTL and  $T_s$  cells express the cell surface CD8 protein. Additionally, mature T cells can be distinguished from immature T cells (thymocytes) by the presence of the cell surface T cell receptor (TCR), a transmembrane protein complex which is capable of recognizing antigen in association with self-antigens encoded by major histocompatibility complex ("MHC") genes.

Initiation and maintenance of immune responses involve cell to cell interactions and depend on the recognition of and interactions between particular proteins or protein complexes on the surface of B cells, T cells, and foreign substances called "antigens".

Both cell-mediated and antibody-mediated components of the immune response begin when a T or B cell recognizes a foreign antigen by binding to a specific site on the antigen; that specific site is known as an "epitope".



-3-

The cell-mediated response involves the lytic activity of CTL activated by exposure to antigen and proceeds in the absence of B cells. A CTL programmed to recognize a particular antigenic epitope (a "CTL epitope") will lyse a cell bearing that epitope on its surface.

For the antibody-mediated response to occur, a  $T_h$  cell which has been activated by exposure to a foreign antigen (a " $T_h$  epitope") interacts with a B cell, which has been activated by exposure to a particular B cell epitope on the same foreign antigen, to stimulate the B cell to produce humoral proteins known as immunoglobulins or antibodies. The antibodies produced by the B cell recognize antigen bearing, on its surface, the B cell epitope.

Thus, the immune response toward an offending pathogen or tumor cell consists of concerted action between  $T_h$ , CTL and B cells which is largely triggered by antigen-mediated signals. This allows the immune response to be selectively directed toward the pathogen or tumor cells, and avoids the destruction of non-infected, non-malignant cells.

## 2.2. Immunoglobulin Genes

Exemplary of the basic components of antibody structure is human immunoglobulin G (IgG). As shown schematically in Figure 1A, IgG is a tetrameric protein complex formed from two identical heavy (H) chains and two identical immunoglobulin light (L) chains. These chains are joined together by disulfide bonds into a Y-shaped antibody complex. In solution however, the molecule takes on a more globular shape.

Amino acid sequence analysis of immunoglobulins has led to the definition of specific regions with various functional activities within the heavy chains. Each light chain and each heavy chain has a

variable region ( $V_L$  and  $V_H$ , respectively) comprised within the first 100 amino acids located at its amino terminus. Three dimensional pairing of the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  regions constitute the antigen-recognition portion or "antigen combining site" ("ACS") of the IgG molecule. Because of the tetrameric nature of immunoglobulins, there are two identical antigen combining sites per molecule. The variable domains of these chains are highly heterogeneous in sequence and provide the diversity for antigen combining sites to be highly specific for a large variety of antigenic structures. The heterogeneity of the variable domains is not evenly distributed throughout the variable regions, but is located in three segments, called complementarity determining regions ("CDRs"), as shown in Figure 1B (Watson et al., 1987, Molecular Biology of the Gene, Fourth Edition, Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., Inc., Menlo Park, CA, p. 845).

Each of the heavy chains also includes three or four constant regions (designated  $C_{H1}$ ,  $C_{H2}$ ,  $C_{H3}$  and, when appropriate,  $C_{H4}$ ), depending on antibody class, which do not vary significantly among antibodies of a single class. The constant regions do not participate in antigen binding, but are associated with a number of biological activities known as "effector functions", such as binding to Fc receptors on cell surfaces and to complement proteins. In addition, the heavy chains have a hinge region separating  $C_{H1}$  and  $C_{H2}$  from the remainder of the molecule. The hinge imparts flexibility to the tetramer.

The light chains have a single constant region ( $C_L$ ). The pairing of  $C_L$  and  $C_{H1}$  produce the first constant domain,  $C_1$ , while the pairing of the  $C_{H2}$  regions produces the second constant domain,  $C_2$  and the pairing of the  $C_{H3}$  regions produces the third constant domain,  $C_3$ .

A light chain pairs with a heavy chain through a disulfide bond which attaches  $C_{H1}$  to  $C_L$ . The two heavy chains of the molecule pair together through disulfide bonds at the junction between the hinge region and  $C_{H2}$ .

Mammals are able to produce antibodies to a seemingly infinite variety of antigens. In order to provide such an extensive repertoire, immunoglobulin genes have evolved so as permit the production of vast numbers of different immunoglobulin proteins from a finite number of genes. This diversity is due, in part, to genetic rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes. A single gene, in an undifferentiated cell, contains a number of different regions.

Figure 1C depicts the genetic events leading to the synthesis of kappa light chain. In the kappa light chain gene, there are three regions, a  $V_K$  region, a  $J_K$  region, and a  $C_K$  region. Both the  $V_K$  and  $J_K$  regions contain a number of domains. Figure 1D depicts the genetic events leading to the synthesis of an immunoglobulin heavy chain, and illustrates that heavy chain genes contain an even greater number of regions, including  $V_H$ ,  $D_H$ ,  $J_H$ , and constant regions, each of which contains multiple elements. Before a B cell can produce antibody molecules, its heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes must rearrange to combine one element from each region. Providing yet more diversity, there are several immunoglobulin classes with varying features. For a review of immunoglobulin genetics and protein structure see Lewin, "Genes III", John Wiley and Sons, N.Y. (1987) and Benjamini and Leskowitz, 1988, Immunology, Alan R. Liss, Inc., New York, pp.75-84 (for Figures 1C and 1D).

### 2.3. Therapeutic Manipulations Of The Immune Response

Genetic engineering techniques have been applied to components of the immune system in hopes of

enhancing the natural immune response and to provide reagents for performing diagnostic tests.

Antibodies are extremely important in diagnostic and therapeutic applications due to their  
5 diversity and specificity. Molecular biology techniques have been used to increase the availability of antibodies for scientific applications.

For instance, a single antibody producing B cell can be immortalized by fusion with a tumor cell  
10 and expanded to provide an in vitro source of antibodies of a single specificity known as a "monoclonal antibody" (mAb). Such an immortal B cell line is termed a "hybridoma".

Until recently, the source of most mAb has  
15 been murine (mouse) hybridomas. Although they have been used extensively in diagnostic procedures, murine mAb are not well suited for induction of passive immunity or other therapeutic applications in mammals including humans and nonsyngeneic mice. Moreover,  
20 murine antibodies are recognized as foreign by other mammalian species and elicit an immune response which may itself cause illness. Human mAb would therefore be extremely useful in the treatment of a wide variety of human diseases.

25 To overcome the problems of immune responses to foreign mAb and the lack of suitable human mAb, at least in part, genetic engineering techniques have been used to construct so-called "humanized" immunoglobulin molecules which contain the antigen binding com-  
30 plementarity determining regions of the murine antibodies but in which the remainder of the molecule is composed of human antibody sequences which are not recognized as foreign. Jones et al., "Replacing the Complementarity-Determining Regions in a Human Antibody

With Those From a Mouse", Nature, 321:522-525 (1986). These hybrid "humanized" antibodies eventually may be used as "immunotherapeutic" reagents in humans.

5 In further applications of genetic engineering technology, protein sequences corresponding to the epitopes of antigens of various organisms have been prepared both synthetically and by recombinant DNA techniques for use in vaccines. Administration of such synthetic epitopes has been problematic, however, in  
10 view of the short half-life of peptides in the mammalian body. In many cases, effective exposure to such peptides has been too brief to permit the induction of a satisfactory immune response.

### 3. Summary Of The Invention

15 The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site.

It is based, at least in part, on the discovery that the replacement of at least a portion of an  
20 immunoglobulin molecule with a peptide comprising a B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site may be accomplished without eliminating the functional activities of either the epitope/antigen binding site or the parent immunoglobulin molecule. According to the  
25 invention, antibody molecules comprising an inserted T cell or B cell epitope may effectively induce a T cell or B cell immune response, respectively.

In view of these properties, and because of the longer half-lives exhibited by immunoglobulin  
30 molecules relative to peptides, the chimeric antibodies of the invention may provide, in vaccine development, an attractive alternative to synthetic peptides bearing the same epitopes. Such chimeric antibodies may not only prolong exposure time to the antigen, but may  
35 recruit elements of the immune system so as to augment

-8-

and improve the efficiency of the overall immune response.

In various embodiments of the invention, chimeric antibodies may be produced which contain more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, including combinations of these elements.

In one nonlimiting embodiment, a chimeric antibody comprises both a B cell epitope as well as a helper T cell epitope. Such an antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

In further nonlimiting embodiments of the invention, the recombinant antibody molecules are covalently linked to polyethylene glycol ("pegylated"). Such pegylated recombinant antibodies are capable of producing an enhanced immune response in the absence of adjuvants.

In preferred embodiments of the invention, where a chimeric antibody is to be used in a human subject, the constant region of the antibody comprises a majority of human immunoglobulin constant region peptide sequence so as to avoid an interspecies immune response, because the strongest antigenic determinants are located on the Ig constant regions.

#### 4. Description Of The Figures

Figure 1A is an illustration of an immunoglobulin molecule illustrating its Y shape, combining sites, hinge regions, light and heavy chains and their corresponding variable and constant domains.

Figure 1B depicts the location of variable and hypervariable (CDR) regions in light and heavy immunoglobulin chains. The numbers indicate typical amino acid positions, and S---S indicates a disulfide bridge.

Figure 1C is an illustration of immunoglobulin kappa light chain gene structure.

Figure 1D is an illustration of immunoglobulin heavy chain gene structure.

5 Figure 2 is an illustration of a protein complex containing a single immunoglobulin combining site capable of recognizing a virus, virus infected cell or viral antigen, a single immunoglobulin combining site capable of recognizing and binding to CDR3  
10 so as to activate CTL, and an immunoglobulin hinge region separating the combining sites from the immunoglobulin constant domain CH2 and CH3 regions.

Figure 3 is a schematic diagram of a DNA construct containing the VH-D-J gene.

15 Figure 4 is a flow diagram showing a cloning scheme of the VH-D-J region.

Figure 5 illustrates the insertion of B cell epitope HA sequence in place of CDR2 segment.

20 Figure 6 presents nucleotide sequencing analysis of two clones, termed C3 and C8, which show the deletion of CDR2 sequence of 91A3 V<sub>H</sub> and insertion in the correct frame of sequence encoding the B cell epitope (SEQ ID NO: 16).

25 Figure 7. Schematic representation and immunochemical properties of Ig-HIV-1 peptide chimeras. (A): The H and L chain variable regions (filled boxes) of the murine anti-arsonate 91A3 antibody (Rathburn et al., 1988, J. Mol. Biol. 202:383-395; Sanz et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. cad. Sci. USA. 84:1085-1089) were  
30 used along with the H and L chain constant regions (hatched boxes) of human Kappa and  $\gamma$ 1 chains (Dangl et al., 1988, EMBO.J. 7:1994-1988; Oi et al., 1986, Bio Techniques 4:214-221) to generate Ig chimeras carrying HIV-1 V<sub>3</sub> determinants (open squares). Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, carries a  
35 19 amino acid residue consensus sequence from the PND of the V<sub>3</sub> loop of HIV-1; Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, carries a 19 amino acid

-10-

residue sequence from the PND of the V<sub>3</sub> loop of the WMJ2 HIV-1 isolate; and Ig-W is a control Ig that carries the natural D segment.

(B): The Ig-HIV-1 peptide chimeras were assayed for heavy and light chain assembly (a) by a capture assay where 10 ng of purified chimeras were incubated on plates coated with anti-human kappa mAb and captured chimeras were revealed with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled goat antibodies specific for the Fc region of human  $\gamma$ 1. The antigenicity of HIV-1 peptides on the chimeras was assayed by incubating Ig chimera coated plates with rabbit antibodies specific for either the consensus (b) or the WMJ2 (c) HIV-1 V<sub>3</sub> sequences and bound rabbit antibodies were revealed with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled goat anti-rabbit IgG antibodies. Ig-HA is a murine Ig chimera expressing a T helper epitope of the hemagglutinin antigen of influenza virus (Zaghouani et al., 1993, Science 259:224-227), and is used as negative control.

Figure 8. Production of anti-PND antibodies subsequent to immunization of baboons with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M. Adult baboons were immunized with the indicated Ig chimeras, bled and their sera were assayed for binding to V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA conjugate (a), to V<sub>3</sub>M-BSA conjugate (b), to 519-535-BSA conjugate (c), and to BSA (not shown) by radioimmunoassay. The immunization and bleeding schedule was as follows: baboons were bled at day 1 and were immunized with 500  $\mu$ g of Ig-peptide chimeras emulsified in incomplete Freund's Adjuvant at day 15, and in Alum at days 29 and 43. The animal were bled at days 65, 80, and 101. They were boosted with 500  $\mu$ g Ig-peptide chimeras in Alum at day 122 and bled at day 136. Finally, 500  $\mu$ g Ig-peptide chimeras were given as a boost at day 150 and the animals were bled at days 164 and 178. The sera were tested at various dilutions (1:10, 1:100, and 1/1000) and the data shown are those obtained with 1:100 serum dilution. Each



-11-

dilution was tested in triplicate wells and the indicated cpm represent the mean  $\pm$  SD after deduction of background cpm obtained on plates coated with BSA.

Figure 9. Radioimmunoprecipitation of HIV-1 gp120 by anti-serum from baboons immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Precipitation was performed using lysates from MN (left panel) and IIIB (right panel) isolates. 1 preimmune, 2 preimmune, and 3 preimmune, are sera collected at day 1 from baboons numbered 1 to 3; 1 a Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, anti-serum from baboon number 1 immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C collected at day 164; 2 a Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, anti-serum from baboon number 2 immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M collected at day 164; 3 a Ig-W, anti-serum from baboon number 3 immunized with Ig-W collected at day 164; Rab a 503-535, a positive control anti-serum from a rabbit immunized with the peptide 503-535 which corresponds to a conserved sequence at the carboxyterminal end of gp120 of HIV-1 and are known to precipitate the envelope protein (Zaghouani et al., 1991, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:55645-5649); hum HIV (+), serum from HIV-1 infected individual; and hum HIV (-), serum from HIV negative individual. These precipitation patterns were obtained with 20  $\mu$ l of baboon serum, 10  $\mu$ l of rabbit serum and 1  $\mu$ l of human serum.

Figure 10. Neutralization of MN isolate by anti-serum from baboon immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Sera from baboons immunized with indicated chimeras were tested for HIV-1 MN (left) and IIIB (right) neutralizing activity. All bleeds from day 1 to day 178 were tested and the data shown are those obtained with sera collected at day 164. The percent neutralization was calculated as described (Warren et al., 1992, J. Clin. Microbiol. 30:126-131; Warren et al., 1992, J. Virol. 66:5210-5215).

Figure 11. Production of antibodies specific for V<sub>3</sub> derived peptides by human lymphocytes stimulated

-12-

with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M coupled to tetanus toxoid (Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M-TT). PBMC from HIV-1 infected individuals (CE and SLF) as well as from a non infected co-worker (K) were incubated for 7 to 10 days with graded amounts of Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M-TT (a, d, and g), Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M (b, e, and h), or Ig-W-TT (c, f, and i) and subsequently, the culture supernatants were tested for binding to V<sub>3</sub>M-BSA conjugate (top panel), to V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA conjugate (middle panel), to NP147-161-BSA (bottom panel) and to BSA (background control not shown). Each supernatant (50  $\mu$ l) was tested in triplicate and the data are presented as mean  $\pm$  SD after deduction of background obtained on plates coated with BSA. The results shown are those obtained after 10 days of incubation of the cells with the Ig-peptide chimeras and are representative of two experiments. Similar results were obtained for the experiments carried out for a period of 7 days of incubation of the PBMC with the chimeric immunoglobulins.

Figure 12. *Blood clearance of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Mice (three per group) were injected i.v. with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG as indicated in Section 9.1.. The mice were rested for 15 minutes to allow uniform distribution of radiolabeled material and then blood samples were collected at various intervals of time. Radioactivity content of total blood volume was estimated and considered as the total radioactivity injected (TRI). Blood samples were collected at indicated times and total residual radioactivity (TRR) was estimated. The percent of residual activity was estimated according to the following formula  $[1 - (TRR/TRI)] \times 100$ . Each point represents the mean  $\pm$  SD of three mice.

Figure 13. *In vivo proteolysis of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Serum samples from mice injected i.v. with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG ( $20 \times 10^6$  cpm/mouse) were collected at indicated times after

injection and 5 $\mu$ l of serum was run on an 8-17% gradient polyacrylamide gel. Separated material was electro-transferred onto PVDF membranes and exposed to Kodak X-OMAT films. Left panel shows the pattern of in vivo degradation over time of samples collected from a mouse injected with Ig-HA. Right panel shows the pattern of in vivo degradation from a mouse injected with Ig-HA-mPEG. Samples of  $^{125}\text{I}$  labeled Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG (5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cpm/5 $\mu$ l) were analyzed in parallel in the corresponding panel and used as controls (C) of non degraded material prior to inoculation into mice.

Figure 14. *Tissue distribution of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Groups of seven mice each (15-17 g weight) were injected i.v. with  $^{125}\text{I}$  labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. The mice were rested for 15 min to allow uniform distribution of the labeled material and blood samples were collected. Fragments of visceral organs were then resected at indicated times after injection. Tissue distribution of native or pegylated Ig-HA was estimated as % ID. Each point represents % ID for a mouse corresponding to the indicated time after injection.

Figure 15. *In vitro activation of HA110-120 specific LD1-24 T cell hybridomas by native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Graded amounts of chromatographically purified Ig-HA, Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-NP-mPEG were incubated with 2PK3 antigen presenting cells ("APCs"; 10<sup>4</sup>) and LD1-24 T hybridoma cells (2 x 10<sup>4</sup>). Activation of LD1-24 T cells was assessed 48 hours later by measuring IL-3 production in supernatant using the IL-3 dependent DA-1 cells (15 x 10<sup>4</sup>) and MTT assay. Each point represents the mean of quadruplets plus or minus SD.

Figure 16. *In vivo priming of HA110-120 specific T cells by native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Four groups of seven mice each were immunized subcutaneously

at the base of the tail and in the foot pads with Ig-HA or IgHA-mPEG in either saline or CFA. Ten days later the draining lymph nodes were collected and cells were cultured for 5 days in standard conditions with graded amounts of various antigens. [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine was added for 18 hours and incorporation was measured. Panels (a) and (b) represent the [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation by lymph node cells from mice immunized with Ig-HA in saline and CFA, respectively. Panels (c) and (d) represent the [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation by lymph node cells from mice immunized with Ig-HA-mPEG in saline and CFA, respectively. In all cases stimulation in vitro was carried out with graded amounts (0.5, 1, 5 and 10 µg/ml) of Ig-HA, Ig-NP, HA110-120 synthetic peptide, NP147-161 synthetic peptide or UV-inactivated PR8 virus. [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation upon in vitro stimulation with concanavalin A ("ConA") for three days is also indicated. Each point represents the mean of quadruplet wells plus or minus SD, after subtraction of cpm obtained in the absence of antigen.

Figure 17. Antibody response of mice immunized with native and pegylated Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Groups of three mice were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (open circles) or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG closed circles), bled at indicated intervals of time and the titers of antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (panels a, b, c and d) and to human isotypic determinants (panels e, f, g and h) were determined. In panel a and c the mice were immunized subcutaneously with 100 µg of either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG emulsified in CFA and boosted two weeks later with 50 µg of antigens in Incomplete Freund's adjuvant (IFA). Arrows indicate the days of immunization. The other protocols of immunizations were performed with either three injections i.p. of 100 µg of antigen in saline at seven day intervals (panels b and f), or two injections i.p. of 100 µg of antigens in saline at seven day inter-

vals (panels c and g), or a single injection i.p. of 100 $\mu$ g of antigens in saline (panels d and h). The antibody titers were determined by RIA. Each point represents the mean plus or minus S.D. of three mice.

5                   Figure 18. Separation of Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates from unpegylated Ig-HA by HPLC on Q300 anion exchange column. Panel (a) shows the elution profile of the material collected from peak 1 in Figure 21 and loaded onto the Q300 column. Panel (b) shows a control  
10                   elution profile of a preparation of unpegylated Ig-HA.

                  Figure 19. Detection of residual mPEG in AIGs-mPEG preparations by electrophoresis on Titan agarose Gel. Samples collected at various steps of purification were run on duplicate Titan gels and  
15                   either stained with Coomassie/Ponceau (R250) or precipitated with TCA. Lane 1, IgHA-mPEG conjugate after purification on anion-exchange HPLC; lane 2, unpegylated IgHA; lane 3, mPEG 5,000 ( $4 \times 10^{-4}$ M); lane 4, IgHA-mPEG conjugate after first step of purification  
20                   by gel filtration on Aca44 (not done in Coomassie staining).

                  Figure 20. Analysis of homogeneity of AIG-mPEG preparations by SDS-PAGE. Samples collected subsequent to purification on anion-exchange HPLC were  
25                   analyzed on 4-15% polyacrylamide gradient PhastGels (Pharmacia) under nonreducing conditions. Lanes 1 and 4, unpegylated Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, respectively; lanes 2 and 4, Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG, respectively (content of peak 2 in Figure 19); and lanes 3 and 6 highly  
30                   derivatized Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (content of peak 1 in Figure 19).

                  Figure 21. Removal of hydrolyzed mPEG from AIG-mPEG preparation by size exclusion chromatography. Aca44 Ultrogel column (80 x 1.6 cm) was calibrated at  
35                   0.4 ml/min flow rate with molecular weight markers (Pharmacia, LKB) and then loaded with 10 mg of IgHA-

mPEG preparation. The column was equilibrated with either 0.1M  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$  (panel a) or PBS (panel b). The peak labeled 1 contained the conjugates and peak 2 corresponds to free mPEG. A plus sign indicates the presence of free polymer as detected by Nessler's test.

## 5. Detailed Description Of The Invention

For clarity of presentation, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description of the invention is divided into the following subsections:

- 10 (1) B cell epitopes;
- (2) T cell epitopes;
- (3) antigen binding sites;
- (4) engineering of immunoglobulin molecules;
- (5) chimeric antibodies;
- 15 (6) replacement of a CDR loop of an immunoglobulin with an epitope; and
- (7) uses of antibodies of the invention.

### 5.1. B Cell Epitopes

The term "B cell epitope", as used herein, refers to a peptide, including a peptide comprised in a larger protein, which is able to bind to an immunoglobulin receptor of a B cell and participate in the induction of antibody production by the B cell.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the hypervariable region 3 loop ("V3 loop") of the envelope protein of human immunodeficiency virus ("HIV") type 1 is known to be a B cell epitope. Although the sequence of this epitope varies, the following consensus sequence, corresponding to residues 301-319 of HIV-1 gp120 protein, has been obtained: Arg-Lys-Ser-Ile-His-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Tyr-Thr-Thr-Gly-Glu-Ile-Ile (SEQ ID NO:1). Further description of the use of V3 loop peptide in the context of the present invention is set forth below.

Other examples of known B cell epitopes which may be used according to the invention include, but are not limited to, epitopes associated with influenza virus strains, such as Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Lys-Gly-Asp-Ser-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:2), which has been shown to be an immunodominant B cell epitope in site B of influenza HA1 hemagglutinin, the epitope Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Ser-Gly-Ser-Thr-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:3) (H3), and the epitope Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Glu-Gly-Ser-Asp-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:4) (H2) (Li et al., 1992, J. Virol. 66:399-404); an epitope of F protein of measles virus (residues 404-414; Ile-Asn-Gln-Asp-Pro-Asp-Lys-Ile-Leu-Thr-Tyr (SEQ ID NO:5); Parlidos et al., 1992, Eur. J. Immunol. 22:2675-2680); an epitope of hepatitis virus pre-S1 region, from residues 132-145 (Leclerc, 1991, J. Immunol. 147:3545-3552); and an epitope of foot and mouth disease VP1 protein, residues 141-160, Met-Asn-Ser-Ala-Pro-Asn-Leu-Arg-Gly-Asp-Leu-Gln-Lys-Val-Ala-Arg-Thr-Leu-Pro (SEQ ID NO:6) (Clarke et al., 1987, Nature 330:381-384).

Still further B cell epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art, as set forth in Caton et al., 1982, Cell 31:417-427.

## 5.2. T Cell Epitopes

The term "T cell epitope", as used herein, refers to a peptide, including a peptide comprised in a larger protein, which is associated with MHC self antigens and recognized by a T cell and which functionally activates the T cell.

For example, a  $T_h$  epitope is recognized by a helper T cell and promotes the facilitation of B cell antibody production via the  $T_h$  cell. Such epitopes are believed to arise when antigen presenting cells ("APCs") have taken up and degraded a foreign protein. The peptide products of degradation, which include the  $T_h$  epitope, appear on the surface of the APC in association with MHC class II antigens.

Further, a CTL epitope is recognized by a cytotoxic T cell; when the CTL recognizes the CTL epitope on the surface of a cell, the CTL may induce lysis of the cell. CTL epitopes are believed to arise when an APC has synthesized a protein which is then processed in the cell's cytoplasmic compartment, leading to the generation of peptides (including the CTL epitope) which associate with MHC class I antigens on the surface of the APC and are recognized by  $CD8^+$  cells, including CTL.

For example, and not by way of limitation, influenza A hemagglutinin (HA) protein bears, at amino acid residues 110-120, a  $T_h$  epitope having the amino acid sequence Ser-Phe-Glu-Arg-Phe-Glu-Ile-Phe-Pro-Lys-Glu (SEQ ID NO:7).

Other examples of known T cell epitopes include, but are not limited to, two promiscuous epitopes of tetanus toxoid, Asn-Ser-Val-Asp-Asp-Ala-Leu-Ile-Asn-Ser-Thr-Lys-Ile-Tyr-Ser-Tyr-Phe-Pro-Ser-Val (SEQ ID NO:8) and Pro-Glu-Ile-Asn-Gly-Lys-Ala-Ile-His-Leu-Val-Asn-Asn-Glu-Ser-Ser-Glu (SEQ ID NO:9) (Ho et al., 1990, Eur. J. Immunol. 20:477-483); an epitope of



-19-

cytochrome c, from residues 88-103, Ala-Asn-Glu-Arg-Ala-Asp-Leu-Ile-Ala-Tyr-Leu-Gln-Ala-Thr-Lys (SEQ ID NO:10); an epitope of *Mycobacteria* heatshock protein, residues 350-369, Asp-Gln-Val-His-Phe-Gln-Pro-Leu-Pro-Pro-Ala-Val-Val-Lys-Leu-Ser-Asp-Ala-Leu-Ile (SEQ ID NO:11) (Vordermir et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 24:2061-2067); an epitope of hen egg white lysozyme, residues 48-61, Asp-Gly-Ser-Thr-Asp-Tyr-Gly-Ile-Leu-Gln-Ile-Asn-Ser-Arg (SEQ ID NO:12) (Neilson et al., 1992, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 89: 7380-7383; an epitope of *Streptococcus A M* protein, residues 308-319, Gln-Val-Glu-Lys-Ala-Leu-Glu-Glu-Ala-Asn-Ser-Lys (SEQ ID NO:13) (Rossiter et al., 1994, Eur. J. Immunol. 24:1244-1247); and an epitope of *Staphylococcus* nuclease protein, residues 81-100, Arg-Thr-Asp-Lys-Tyr-Gly-Arg-Gly-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ile-Tyr-Ala-Asp-Gly-Lys-Met-Val-Asn (SEQ ID NO:14) (de Magistris, 1992, Cell 68:1-20). Still further T<sub>h</sub> epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art.

As another example, and not by way of limitation, PR8 influenza virus nucleoprotein bears, at amino acid residues 147-161, a CTL epitope having the amino acid sequence Thr-Tyr-Gln-Arg-Thr-Arg-Ala-Leu-Val-Arg-Thr-Gly-Met-Asp-Pro (SEQ ID NO:15).

Other examples of known CTL epitopes include, but are not limited to, those discussed in Rotzschke et al., 1991, Immunol. Today 12:447-455. Still further CTL epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art.

### 5.3. Antigen Binding Sites

The term "antigen binding site", as used herein, refers to a receptor-like molecule, or a portion thereof, which is capable of binding to a second molecule, the antigen. For example, but not by way of limitation, the receptor-like molecule may preferably

be an immunoglobulin molecule, and the antigen binding site may reside in the variable region of the molecule. In alternate embodiments, however, the receptor-like molecule may be a T cell receptor or other cell-surface receptor molecule, such as an Fc receptor, a complement receptor, a cytokine receptor, etc.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the antigen is an antigen expressed by a pathogen, such as a viral, protozoan, mycoplasmal, fungal or bacterial antigen. For example, and not by way of limitation, such antigens may be HIV gp120 protein, hepatitis B virus surface antigen, influenza virus hemagglutinin proteins, measles virus, poliovirus and rhinovirus antigens, etc.

In alternate embodiments of the invention, the antigen is a tumor specific antigen.

In additional embodiments, the antigen is a portion of an antibody molecule which comprises the combined antigenic determinants (idiotopes) that are directed at a particular second antigen. In such cases, the antigen binding site is functionally similar to an anti-idiotypic antibody. It is well known that anti-idiotypic antibodies carrying the internal image of microbial antigens as well as antibodies against TCR of T cells can stimulate humoral and cellular anti-microbial immunity.

In still further embodiments, the antigen is a cell surface antigen. For example, the antigen may be CD3, a protein associated with the T cell receptor (TCR) of CTL. Binding of antibody to CD3 on CTL may activate the CTL, thereby effecting non-specific cell lysis.

#### 5.4. Engineering Of Immunoglobulin Molecules

According to the invention, a B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, or more than one of such elements, may be inserted into an immunoglobulin molecule (termed the "parent immunoglobulin molecule"). The molecule resulting from the insertion is termed a "chimeric immunoglobulin molecule", which may be incorporated into an antibody of the invention. The term "chimeric", as used herein, refers to a molecule which has been engineered to link together segments of nucleic acid or protein which are not typically linked together in nature. The two segments may originate from the same, or from different, species of organism. For example, it may be particularly advantageous to link together segments, all of which are derived from humans, so as to produce an entirely human chimeric antibody..

Such insertion may preferably be accomplished by replacing a segment of the gene encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with nucleic acid encoding the desired epitope or antigen binding site at a region of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule which is not essential for expression or for function of the parent immunoglobulin protein molecule (but which may abolish its original specificity) and which will position the epitope or antigen binding site such that the biological function of the inserted peptide sequence (as either an epitope or antigen-binding site) may be retained. Such retention need not be complete; the function of the inserted peptide may be either enhanced or diminished relative to the natural peptide, but its activity cannot be eliminated completely.

Replacement of a segment of the gene, and consequent replacement of a segment of its encoded immunoglobulin molecule, is advantageous as compared to

the addition of segments, because the addition of segments is associated with a limit to the length of segments which may be added. This is because if a long peptide is added, its insertion may not allow for proper folding of the immunoglobulin molecule and proper assembly with its partner immunoglobulin chain. Improperly folded molecules are frequently degraded rather than excreted. Furthermore, insertion of new amino acids, for example, but not by limitation, in the creation of a restriction endonuclease cleavage site, may create new, undesirable epitopes and thereby induce the formation of undesirable antibodies.

The nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule may be DNA or RNA, and may be comprised in a vector molecule.

The identification of an appropriate insertion site in the parent immunoglobulin molecule includes at least two considerations. The first involves a determination of which regions of the parent immunoglobulin molecule are necessarily or desirably retained. For example, it may be desirable to maintain basic antibody structure, and to retain the constant regions of the molecule, in which case it may be particularly desirable to insert the epitope or antigen-binding site into a hypervariable region (CDR; see for example, section 5.6, *infra*). Further, it is undesirable to insert sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site into a region of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule which is important for efficient transcription or translation or which is not transcribed into RNA or not translated into protein. It may not be necessary, however, for the antigen-binding specificity of the parent immunoglobulin to be retained; to the contrary, it may be desirable that such antigen-binding capability be lost, as loss of this capability may be indicative or con-

sequent to the insertion of epitope or new antigen-binding sequence.

The second consideration relates to the functional activity of the inserted epitope or antigen binding site. Preferably the epitope or antigen-binding site is inserted so as to be positioned at a superficial location (i.e., an exposed area) on the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, such that it is capable of interacting with a B cell or T cell or of binding to an antigen.

The epitope or antigen binding site (or more than one of such elements) may be inserted into the parent immunoglobulin molecule by any method known in the art. Preferably, nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site may be inserted into the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule in such a manner that a portion of immunoglobulin-encoding sequence is replaced by the nucleic acid sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site. By replacing a portion of the sequence, the overall configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule may be minimally disturbed. In contrast, the addition of inserted sequences would be expected to distort the geometry of the immunoglobulin molecule; as the size or hydrophobicity/hydrophilicity of the inserted sequence increases, such effects may become problematic.

Most preferably, the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site is inserted into the immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid by polymerase chain reaction ("PCR") techniques.

Nucleic acid engineered to encode a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule according to the invention may be cloned using standard techniques. Detailed DNA cloning methods, exemplary of standard laboratory techniques, are provided in a variety of sources. See e.g. Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning A Laboratory

~~Manual", Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, NY~~

(1989). Specific, nonlimiting examples of the preparation of nucleic acids encoding particular chimeric immunoglobulin molecules are set forth below.

5           Once the nucleic acid encoding a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule has been cloned, it may be introduced into a suitable host for expression of the encoded protein. The cloned nucleic acid may be first inserted into an appropriate expression vector or may  
10 be transfected into the cell as linear DNA for recombination with the host genome. Suitable expression vectors include but are not limited to plasmids, viruses and retroviruses. Choice of a suitable vector will be determined in part on the choice of the host  
15 used for protein expression.

          Suitable hosts include but are not limited to bacteria, mammalian cell lines, whole animals such as transgenic mice and insect cell lines. Insect cell lines are less expensive to maintain and produce more  
20 protein compared to mammalian cell lines and are thus more suitable to large-scale protein production. Genes expressed by insect cell lines do not contain exons therefore the exons should be excised from nucleic acid encoding chimeric immunoglobulin molecules prior to  
25 their expression in insect cell lines. Excision is relatively straightforward and can be accomplished for instance directly by oligonucleotide directed site-specific mutagenesis or indirectly by cDNA cloning.

          Transfer of the gene into the host can be  
30 done by any of the well known means in the art. For example, methods of gene transfer include but are not limited to  $\text{CaCl}_2$  mediated transfection in the case of bacteria and in the case of eukaryotic cells,  $\text{CaPO}_4$  mediated transfection, viral infection including retroviral latent infection, electroporation, liposome mediated DNA transfer and microinjection among others.  
35

Any suitable method of purifying proteins produced by the host may be used in the practice of the present invention. See e.g. Webb et al., "Cell-surface Expression and Purification of Human CD4 Produced in Baculovirusinfected Insect Cells", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 85:7731-7735 (1989); and Moran et al., "Characterization of Variable-Region Genes and Shared Crossreactive Idiotypes of Antibodies Specific for Antigens of Various Influenza Viruses", Vir. Immunol., 1:1-12 (1987).

In preferred embodiments of the invention, the chimeric immunoglobulin of the invention has a Y shaped base portion which is the same as some or all of the constant regions of human immunoglobulin. This use of human immunoglobulin avoids the problem of the modified immunoglobulin being recognized as a foreign species itself, and thus facilitates its use in human therapy. Additionally the base portion may confer effector functions on the molecule such as in vivo stability, Fc receptor binding, protein A binding, complement fixation, and placental transfer (in the case of IgG). It will thus be understood that modified sequences based on immunoglobulin molecules are within the scope of the present invention so long as the modification does not give rise to immune rejection problems.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the following general method may be used. The nucleic acid sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site may be analyzed to search for and identify a restriction enzyme (referred to as "enzyme A") which cleaves at one site in the nucleic acid sequence. If no such site is present, one may be engineered into the sequence; however, it should be noted that it is preferable not to add nucleic acid sequence, in that such addition may, as set forth above, distort the

conformation of the encoded immunoglobulin molecule.

Four PCR primers may then be prepared. The first PCR primer (termed "P1") may be essentially complementary to the sense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule. The second PCR primer (termed "P2") may be complementary to the antisense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule, but may further comprise, at its 5' end, a portion of the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen-binding site to be inserted, which portion is in frame and spans the cleavage site for enzyme A and which replaces a portion of the parent immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid of similar size. The third PCR primer (termed "P3") may be essentially complementary to the antisense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule. The fourth PCR primer (termed "P4") may be complementary to the sense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule, but may further comprise, at its 5' end, a portion of the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site to be inserted, which portion is in frame and spans the cleavage site for enzyme A, and which replaces a portion of the parent immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid of similar size. The portions of nucleic acid sequence encoding epitope or antigen-binding site in P2 and P4 taken together contain the entire sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site to be inserted. P1 and P3 may be positioned on opposite sides of the designated insertion site. P1 and P2 primers may then be used in PCR to produce a fragment X. P3 and P4 primers may be used in PCR to produce a fragment Y. The resulting fragments may then be cleaved by enzyme A, and then fragments X and Y can be ligated together.



-27-

The ligated fragment XY may then be inserted, in the context of nucleic acid encoding appropriate regions of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, into a suitable vector, which may then be used to express chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, using standard techniques. If the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is a heavy chain molecule, it is preferably expressed in a cell concurrently with the expression of a compatible light chain immunoglobulin molecule. For example, if the parent immunoglobulin is a heavy chain known to form a functional antibody with a particular light chain, the chimeric immunoglobulin is preferably expressed together with that light chain. A particularly preferred cell for expression of chimeric immunoglobulin is a non-secreting myeloma cell line, such as the BALB/c SP2/0 cell line, which may be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection, where the cell line is designated "SP2/0-Ag14", assigned the accession number ATCC CRL 1581.

In Example Sections 6, 7 and 8 provided below, two DNA expression vectors, pSV2gpt-91A3VH-CIgG2b and pSV2neo-91A3L, were utilized, which carry, respectively, a heavy and a light chain gene of an anti-arsonate antibody called 91A3. The pSV2gpt-91A3VH-CIgG2b carries an IgG2b constant region gene inserted in the HindIII restriction endonuclease site of the vector and a 5.5 kb DNA segment containing the rearranged VHDJ gene of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody inserted in the EcoRI restriction endonuclease site as shown in Figure 3. The 5.5 kb fragment also contains the heavy chain Ig promoter and enhancer. The pSV2neo-91A3L carries the rearranged VL and CL genes and the necessary regulatory elements inserted into the EcoRI and BamHI restriction endonuclease sites.

It has now been shown that cotransfection of these vectors into the nonsecreting myeloma cell line,

SP2/0 leads to the expression of a functional 91A3 antibody. This antibody derives its VH from the J558 family and its D segment is probably involved in antigen binding. These observations suggest that these D segments are surface exposed. In fact, the hydrophilicity profile of the 91A3 VH also predicts that its D segment is surface exposed. For these reasons the 91A3VHDJ was chosen to construct a chimeric immunoglobulin carrying various foreign epitopes, including a CD8 epitope from influenza virus nucleoprotein, a CD4 epitope from influenza virus hemagglutinin, and B cell epitopes from HIV-1 or influenza viruses.

In Example Section 7, below, the D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody was replaced by influenza virus nucleoprotein (NP) epitope which is capable of being recognized by CTL cells. The 9 amino acid D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody was replaced with a 15 amino acid NP CTL epitope as illustrated in Figure 3. The NP epitope corresponds to amino acid residues 147-161 within the NP of PR8 virus and is known to induce virus specific CTLs in Balb/C but not C57BL/6 mice.

The construct was expressed in the SP2/0 myeloma cell line, and was recognized by anti-NP antibodies. Such transfected SP2/0 were killed by T cells specific for the NP epitope.

In the influenza system, anti-hemagglutinin ("anti-HA") antibodies play a major protective role since they prevent viral attachment. The anti-HA antibody response is T dependent requiring both helper T cells and B cells. Since the ultimate goal of a vaccine is to induce protective immunity, it may be desirable to produce a chimeric antibody bearing both B and T<sub>h</sub> cell epitopes.

A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule carrying a HA T<sub>h</sub> epitope was prepared (Zaghouani et al., 1993,

Science 259:224-227) using methods analogous to those set forth above. The 5.5 kb DNA fragment encoding the heavy chain variable region ("V<sub>H</sub>") of the 91A3 antibody was used in PCR mutagenesis (Zaghouani et al., 1992, J. Immunol. 148: 3604) to replace the D segment with a nucleotide sequence encoding a T<sub>h</sub> epitope of the HA of PR8 influenza virus. This epitope corresponds to amino acid residues 110 to 120 of HA and is recognized by CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in association with I-E<sup>d</sup> MHC class II molecules. The mutated V<sub>H</sub> gene, from which the D segment was deleted and the cognate peptide sequence inserted in the correct frame, was subcloned in a pSV2gpt vector upstream of the exons of the BALB/c gamma 2b constant region from which the MOPC 141 VDJ fragment had been excised. To express this gene with the homologous light chain gene, the vector was transfected into the non-Ig-secreting BALB/c myeloma B cell line SP2/0, together with a pSV2-neo vector carrying the rearranged 91A3 light chain gene. The resulting antibody was termed "Ig-HA".

In order to introduce a B cell epitope into Ig-HA, the CDR2 loop of Ig-HA may be replaced with 10 amino acid residues, WLTEDEGSYP (SEQ ID NO:17) which have been shown to be an immunodominant B cell epitope in site B of PR8 virus hemagglutinin, using similar methods. A DNA fragment encoding the H chain V region, encompassing the H chain Ig promoter and enhancer, the leader sequence, the V-HA110-120-J chimeric variable region, and the major intron of Ig-HA may be subcloned and used as a template DNA along with four different primers in two sets of PCR reactions designed to replace the CDR2 loop with nucleotide sequences that will encode the HA B cell peptide. The sequences of the primers may be as follows: Primer P1 may have the sequence (5'-AGCTGAGGACAAAGAAGA-3') (SEQ ID NO:18), complementary to sequences within the intron region

downstream of the Apa I site. Primer P2 may have the sequence (5'-CCGAAAAGG-AGGGATCCTATCCCAAGACCACACTGACTGTACACAAA-3') (SEQ ID NO:19), which contains 5' unmatched sequences

5 corresponding to a portion of the B cell epitope of HA and 3' sequences complementary to sequences starting at the last base downstream of the CDR2. Primer P3 may have the sequence (5'-CAAATCACCCAAGTGTATGGC-3') (SEQ ID NO:20), which is complementary to noncoding sequences

10 upstream of the NcoI site and primer and P4 may have the sequence (5'-GGGATAGG-ATCCCTCCTTTTCGGTTAACCATCCAATCCATTCCAGCCCCTGTCCAGGCCT-3') (SEQ ID NO:21), which contains 5' sequences

15 corresponding to a portion of the B cell epitope of HA epitope and 3' sequences complementary to sequences starting at the first base upstream of the CDR2 loop. In the first set of reactions, 100ng of template DNA may be used with 500ng of each primer P1 and P2 to generate a fragment spanning a portion of the B cell

20 epitope and V-HA110-120-J and intron sequences. In the second set of PCR reactions, 100 ng of template DNA may be used with primers P3 and P4 (500ng each) to generate a fragment spanning the opposite portion of the B cell epitope of HA, upstream V region sequences and leader

25 and promoter sequences. The two fragments may then be digested with BamHI and ligated through this intentionally created site to generate a fragment containing the full B cell epitope sequence in place of CDR2. This fragment may be digested with NcoI and ApaI

30 and subcloned into pUC19-91A3 V<sub>H</sub> from which an NcoI-ApaI fragment was cut out. Figure 5 illustrates the insertion of B cell epitope of HA sequence in place of CDR2 segment. Nucleotide sequencing analysis (Figure 6) of two clones produced according to the above method,

35 termed C3 and C8, show the deletion of CDR2 sequence of 91A3 V<sub>H</sub>-HA110-120 and insertion in the correct frame of

sequence encoding the B cell epitope. The new 5.5 kb 91A3 doubly chimeric fragment may be subcloned into the EcoR1 site of the expression vector pSV2-gpt Cy2b in front of the exons encoding the constant region of a BALB/c  $\gamma$ 2b. The resulting vector may be cotransfected with pSV2-neo-91A3  $V_k J_k C_k$  into the nonsecreting BALB/c myeloma B cell line, SP2/0. Positive clones secreting Ig-HA-B may be selected with mycophenolic acid and geneticin, and Ig-HA-B may be purified from transfectoma supernatant on a rat anti-mouse K light chain antibody-sepharose column.

The present invention provides for purified and isolated nucleic acid molecules encoding chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, as set forth above, to such nucleic acid molecules comprised in suitable vector molecules, and to cells and cell lines into which such nucleic acid molecules have been introduced.

#### 5.5. Chimeric Antibodies

The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise parent immunoglobulin molecules to which have been added one or more elements selected from the group consisting essentially of B cell epitopes, T cell epitopes, and antigen binding sites. Such epitopes and/or antigen binding sites may preferably be added by genetic engineering of immunoglobulin genes, as described above.

The present invention provides for compositions comprising purified chimeric antibody molecules which comprise chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, as described above.

A first nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a B cell epitope. An example

of such an antibody is set forth in Example Section 8, below.

5 A second nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a  $T_h$  cell epitope. An example of such an antibody is Ig-HA, described above.

10 A third nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a CTL cell epitope. An example of such an antibody is set forth in Example Section 7, below.

15 A fourth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises an antigen binding site. For example, such an antigen binding site may be able to bind to CD3 antigen on the surface  
20 of CTLs, which may activate such CTLs.

In additional embodiments of the invention, recombinant antibodies may be produced which contain more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, including combinations of these  
25 elements. Such antibodies may be produced by any of the methods set forth above, including, but not restricted to, methods which replace portions of immunoglobulin genes and proteins. That is to say, the addition of nucleic acid or amino acid to immunoglobulin genes or  
30 proteins, respectively, is within the scope of the invention. The following embodiments relate to antibodies which contain more than one epitope or antigen binding site.

35 A fifth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising both a CTL epitope as well

as a target antigen binding site. The CTL epitope and antigen binding site may reside within the same chimeric immunoglobulin molecule.

5 A sixth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising both a B cell epitope as well as a  $T_h$  epitope. The B cell epitope and  $T_h$  epitope may reside within the same chimeric immunoglobulin molecule or in different chimeric immunoglobulin mole-  
10 cules. An example of such a chimeric antibody is described in the preceding section, and includes a B cell HA epitope as well a  $T_h$  HA epitope. Further examples of B/ $T_h$  combinations include, but are not limited to, combinations where both epitopes derive from the same  
15 pathogen, such as influenza virus, measles virus, respiratory syncytial virus, tetanus toxoid, HIV-1, and HIV-2, to name but a few. Preferably, the B cell epitope resides in the variable region of both arms of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the  $T_h$  epitope resides in  
20 the variable region of both arms of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin. Such a chimeric antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

25 A seventh nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising a B cell epitope and is covalently linked to a non-immunoglobulin molecule bearing a  $T_h$  epitope. Preferably, the B cell  
30 epitope resides in the variable region of both arms of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the  $T_h$  epitope is covalently linked to the hinge region of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin. For example, the non-immunoglobulin molecule may be tetanus toxoid, as discussed in Example  
35 Section 8, below. Such a chimeric antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell

epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

An eighth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising  
5 purified chimeric antibody comprising a first antigen binding site which recognizes a tumor cell or pathogen and a second antigen binding site that binds to a CTL surface protein, wherein binding of the second antigen binding site to the CTL surface protein activates the  
10 CTL. For example, the first antigen binding site may bind to a viral antigen, such as an influenza or HIV antigen, and the second antigen binding site may bind to CD3. Figure 3 depicts such an antibody. The first antigen binding site may bind to viral antigen expressed on the surface of an infected cell, and the second  
15 antigen binding site may bind to a CTL, thereby bringing the CTL into proximity to the infected cell and activating the lytic activity of the CTL. Preferably, the first antigen binding site resides in the  
20 variable region of one arm of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the second antigen binding site resides in the variable region of the other arm of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin.

Various chimeric antibodies which, according  
25 to the invention, comprise chimeric immunoglobulins bearing more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, may be prepared by a number of methods. Without limitation, these methods include the following. If one chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is  
30 to be expressed, nucleic acid encoding that molecule may be introduced into a cell for expression, as described above. If more than one chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is to be expressed, nucleic acid molecules encoding such molecules may be co-introduced  
35 into a cell for expression or, alternatively, nucleic acid encoding the various molecules may be introduced



into separate parental cells which are later fused to produce a combination of chimeric immunoglobulin molecules. In such case, prior to fusion, each of the parental cells may be induced to express a different  
5 selectable marker, such that fusions between different species of parental cells may be identified by selecting for the presence of the appropriate combination of selectable markers. For example, genes encoding different selectable markers may be introduced  
10 into the different parental cell lines.

It has further been discovered that the stability of such recombinant antibodies and/or their ability to enhance the immune response is augmented when the antibodies are mildly derivatized with poly-  
15 ethylene glycol ("pegylated"). Mild derivatization of chimeric immunoglobulins with mPEG may significantly increase their half lives and stability without alteration of biological activity. The increase in half life may enhance the immunogenicity of such  
20 molecules and obviate the requirement for adjuvants. For example, and not by way of limitation, the beneficial effects of pegylation of various chimeric antibodies described herein is set forth in Example Sections 9 and 10, below.

#### 25                   5.6 Replacement Of A CDR Loop                   Of An Immunoglobulin With One Or More Epitopes

A preferred embodiment of the present invention relates to a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology which comprises  
30 a parent immunoglobulin molecule from which a CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope or a B cell epitope. The T cell epitope can be a CTL epitope or a helper T cell epitope. The inserted  
35 T cell or B cell epitope occurs in the chimeric immuno-

globulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and retains its specificity as an epitope. Examples of such immunoglobulin molecules are set forth in Example Sections 7 and 8, and further examples of B and T cell epitopes are set forth in the preceding sections 5.1 and 5.2.

As used herein, a foreign peptide sequence refers to a peptide sequence which does not naturally occur at the region of the parent immunoglobulin molecule into which it is inserted. It is preferable that the B cell or the T cell epitope inserted in place of the deleted CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule be of approximately the same size as the deleted CDR loop.

A general method of preparing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of the present invention using the recombinant DNA technology and polymerase chain reaction is set forth in the preceding section 5.4. This general method can be modified and used in generating the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein, which contain a B cell or a T cell epitope in place of the deleted CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule. Furthermore, a method of replacing a CDR3 loop (D segment) with a B cell epitope or a T cell epitope is specifically set forth in Example Sections 7 and 8 and a method of replacing a CDR2 loop is specifically set forth in the preceding section 5.4. These methods can be modified to be used in replacing a CDR1 loop with a B cell or a T cell epitope

The CDR loop deleted and replaced by a B cell or a T cell epitope can be CDR1, CDR2, or CDR3 (D segment) of the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule or it can be CDR1, CDR2, or CDR3 of the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule.

-37-

The present invention also relates to a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology which comprises a parent immunoglobulin molecule from which a CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope and from which another CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope. The T cell epitope can be a CTL epitope or a helper T cell epitope. The CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope are not identical. In such an immunoglobulin molecule, the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope both occur in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, each in place of the corresponding CDR loop which has been deleted, and retain their respective specificity as an epitope.

The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule containing both a T cell epitope and a B cell epitope, as described above, can have a variety of configurations. For example, the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope can each replace a CDR loop of the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, the CDR loop being selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment) or the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope can each replace a CDR loop of the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, the CDR loop being selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3. It is also possible to engineer the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule such that the T cell epitope replaces a CDR loop located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, while the B cell epitope replaces a CDR loop located in the light chain thereof, or the other way around.

The T cell epitope and/or the B cell epitope inserted into the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of

the present invention can be a viral epitope. The viral epitope can be derived from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

The present invention also provides for compositions comprising chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein above. The present invention further provides vaccines comprising those compositions and a suitable carrier and methods of conferring immunity to a subject against a pathogen which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of vaccines. Utilities of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules of the present invention, including their diagnostic in vitro utilities are set forth in section 5.7.

The present invention further provides purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecules encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein, expression vectors into which those recombinant nucleic acid molecules are introduced, and host cells transfected with those vectors.

The present invention provides a method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule comprising deleting a portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding a parent immunoglobulin molecule and replacing the deleted portion with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and maintains its specificity as an epitope.

By using a nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope in place of the nucleic acid sequence

encoding the T cell epitope in the method described above, a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule containing a B cell epitope can be prepared, such that the B cell epitope occurs in place of the deleted CDR loop in the parent immunoglobulin molecule and maintains its specificity as an epitope.

The present invention also provides a method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule comprising deleting and replacing a first portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding a parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope and deleting and replacing a second portion of nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the first portion encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and the second portion encoding another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin, and then expressing the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope occur in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loops and maintain their specificity as epitopes.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the parent immunoglobulin used in preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described above is a human immunoglobulin molecule. In another embodiment of the present invention, the parent immunoglobulin is a murine immunoglobulin molecule. In yet another embodiment of the invention, the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises the constant domain of the human immunoglobulin molecule and the variable domain of the murine immunoglobulin molecule.

The present invention also relates to a method of increasing the stability and the half life of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules of the present invention

-40-

which comprises mildly derivatizing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules with polyethylene glycol. The present invention further relates to compositions comprising these chimeric immunoglobulin molecules which have been mildly derivatized by reacting the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules with polyethylene glycol (pegylated), vaccines comprising these pegylated chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, and methods of immunizing a subject against pathogens which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the pegylated chimeric immunoglobulin molecules.

#### 5.7. Use Of Antibodies Of The Invention

The chimeric antibodies of the present invention may be useful in the diagnosis and treatment of a wide variety of malignancies and viral infections. They are particularly well suited for treatment of infections by viruses which upon infection of the host cell cause expression of viral coat proteins prior to cell death. In most cases this cellular expression of viral coat proteins leads to a cell surface form of such proteins. Examples include but are not limited to the hemagglutinin protein complex of influenza virus, the env proteins of murine leukemia virus, the env proteins of Rous sarcoma virus and the env proteins of HIV. Often the viral protein expressed by infected cells is the same viral coat protein which recognizes and binds to the cell receptor protein to initiate infection. This is true in the case of HIV.

Accordingly, the present invention provides for a method of treating a viral (or bacterial, protozoan, mycoplasmal, or fungal) infection comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. The term "treating" as used herein

refers to an amelioration in the clinical condition of the subject, and does not necessarily indicate that a complete cure has been achieved. An amelioration in clinical condition refers to a prolonged survival, a  
5 decreased duration of illness, or a subjective improvement in the quality of life of the subject.

The present invention provides for a method of enhancing an immune response directed toward a viral, protozoan, mycoplasmal, bacterial or fungal  
10 pathogen, in a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. The phrase "enhancing an  
15 immune response" refers to an increase in cellular and/or humoral immunity. In preferred embodiments, the amount of cellular and/or humoral immunity is increased in the subject by at least 25 percent. Such an enhanced immune response may be desirable during the course of  
20 infection, or before infection may have occurred (for example, in the context of a vaccine).

The present invention also provides for a method of treating a malignancy or other neoplasm comprising administering, to a subject in need of such  
25 treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. In addition to the definition of "treating" set forth above, tumor regression, such as a decrease in tumor mass or in the number of metastases, of preferably at least 25 percent would be considered  
30 "treating".

Further, the present invention provides for a method of enhancing an immune response directed toward a malignancy or other neoplasm, in a subject in need of  
35 such treatment, comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a

composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section.

The foregoing methods may also be practiced by administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, a cell expressing chimeric immunoglobulin molecules. For example, B cells may be harvested from a subject suffering from an infection with a pathogen or from a malignancy. The collected B cells may be transfected with genes encoding chimeric immunoglobulins comprising the appropriate T cell epitope. Transfected B cells expressing the chimeric immunoglobulin may then be reintroduced into the subject in order to sensitize the subject to the pathogen or malignancy and thereby enhance the subject's immune response toward the pathogen or malignancy.

As with all pharmaceutical compositions, the effective amounts of the antibodies of the invention may be determined empirically. Factors to be considered include the condition to be treated, whether or not the antibody will be complexed with or covalently attached to a toxin, route of administration for the composition, i.e. intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, etc., and the number of doses to be administered. Such factors are known in the art and it is well within the skill of physicians to make such determinations without undue experimentation.

The recombinant antibodies of the invention offer a number of in vitro utilities, and the invention provides for methods based on such utilities. Such utilities include, but are not limited to, the following.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a B cell epitope may be used to label B cells. For example, such an antibody may be detectably labeled, and may be used to quantify the number of B cells binding to the particular



epitope in a sample of lymphocytes collected from the subject. Similarly, such an antibody, which need not be detectably labelled, may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount a humoral response to the particular B cell epitope. The inability of lymphocytes of a subject to produce antibodies after exposure to the chimeric immunoglobulin may indicate that the subject is not capable of developing humoral immunity to the epitope. Further, such an antibody may be used to collect B cells which recognize the epitope; for example, the antibody may be fluorescently labelled, so that the B cells may be collected by fluorescence-activated cell sorting.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a  $T_h$  cell epitope may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount an immune response to the particular  $T_h$  cell epitope. For example, peripheral blood lymphocytes may be collected from a test subject, and then, in a standard proliferative assay, may be exposed to the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule bearing the  $T_h$  epitope. The amount of proliferation may then be determined, and may be compared to the degree of proliferation exhibited by peripheral blood lymphocytes from a control subject who has not been exposed to the epitope. A result, in which the amount of proliferation exhibited by the lymphocytes from the test subject is significantly greater than the amount of proliferation exhibited by the lymphocytes from the control subject, positively correlates with prior exposure of the test subject to the epitope, and may indicate that the test subject is or has been infected with a pathogen containing the epitope.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a CTL cell epitope may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount a

~~cellular response to the particular CTL cell epitope.~~

For example, peripheral blood lymphocytes may be collected from a test subject and exposed to the detectably labelled target cells (such as hybridoma cells) expressing chimeric immunoglobulin bearing the CTL epitope. The ability of the peripheral blood lymphocytes to lyse the target cells provides an evaluation of the ability of the subject to mount an effective cell-mediated immune response against a pathogen or tumor cell expressing the CTL epitope. The inability of lymphocytes of a subject to exhibit cytotoxic activity may indicate that the subject is not capable of exercising cellular immunity to the epitope.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises an antigen binding site may be used in diagnostic assays to detect the presence of a particular target antigen, which binds to the antibody binding site. For example, a sample collected from a subject may be immobilized, and then reacted with an effective amount of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule. Labelled secondary antibodies, directed against the immunoglobulin molecule, may then be used to detect the presence of, and/or quantitate the amount of, chimeric immunoglobulin bound. The presence of bound chimeric immunoglobulin may be used to confirm the presence of, and/or quantitate the amount, of target antigen present. Antigens that may be detected in this manner may include prostate specific antigen, Hep BS Ag, HIV antigens, etc.

The following examples are meant to illustrate but not limit this invention.

6. Example: Preparation Of Recombinant Antibodies  
Comprising Various Epitopes

All enzymes were used according to the manufacturer's instructions (New England Biolabs, Beverly, MA). Unless otherwise specifically mentioned, DNA cloning was performed according to the methods described in Maniatis et al., "Molecular Cloning a Laboratory Manual," Cold Spring Harbor Press, Cold Spring Harbor NY (1982).

Using this method the D segment of VH region of 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody is replaced with one of:

(a) The consensus sequence of the B cell epitope of the cysteine loop of gp120. The sequence of this epitope varies, however, a consensus sequence deduced from 245 HIV isolate sequences borne by 245 isolates was established. The amino acid sequence of the consensus corresponds to residues 301-319 of gp120 and is as follows: Arg-Lys-Ser-Ile-His-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Tyr-Thr-ThrGly-Glu-Ile-Ile (termed "V<sub>3</sub>C");

(b) The T cell epitope of residues 12-35 of HIV-1 HxB2 isolate Glu-Leu-Asp-Arg-Trp-Glu-Lys-Ile-Arg-Leu-Arg-Pro-Gly-Gly-Lys- Lys-Lys-Tyr-Lys-Leu-Lys-His-Ile-Val (SEQ ID NO:22);

(c) A T cell epitope of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase; residues 325-349 Ala-Ile-Phe-Gln-Ser-Ser-Met-Thr-Lys-Ile-Leu-Glu-Pro-Phe-Arg-Lys-Gln-Asn-Pro-Asp-Ile-Val-Ile-Tyr-Gln (SEQ ID NO:23);

(d) The amino acid sequence corresponding to the amino acid residues of the principal neutralizing determinant (PND) of WMJ2 HIV-1 isolate at the same positions as the consensus sequence of (a) Arg-Arg-Ser-Leu-Ser-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Arg-The-Arg-Glu-Ile-Ile-Gly (termed "V<sub>3</sub>M") (SEQ ID NO:24);

(e) The amino acid sequence corresponding to amino acid residues 519-535 of HIV-1

IIIB isolate Ala-Val-Gly-Ile-Gly-Ala-Leu-Phe-Leu-Gly-Phe-Leu-Gly-Ala-Ala-Gly-Ser (SEQ ID NO:25);

(f) The amino acid sequence corresponding to residues 110-120 of the hemagglutinin of influenza A virus Ser-Phe-Glu-Arg-Phe-Glu-Ile-Phe-Pro-Lys-Glu (SEQ ID NO:7);

(g) The NP 147-161 peptide corresponding to nucleoprotein of PR8 influenza virus peptide The-Tyr-Gln-Arg-The-Arg-Ala-Leu-Val-Arg-The-Gly-Met-Asp-Pro (SEQ ID NO:15); and

(h) The influenza virus B cell epitope W-L-T-E-K-E-G-S-Y-P (SEQ ID NO:26).

The foregoing epitopes were inserted into the V<sub>H</sub> gene of the 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody by replacing the parental D segment (CDR3, for PR8 HA110-120) or CDR2 (for PR8 HA B cell epitope) using methods exemplified by the insertion of the NP epitope, described in detail in the following section.

## 7. Example: Insertion Of The NP CTL Epitope Into An Anti-Arsonate Parent Immunoglobulin Molecule

### 7.1. Preparation Of The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Molecule

The procedure for deleting the 27 nucleotides coding for the D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody, and the insertion of 45 bases corresponding to the NP epitope, is summarized in Fig. 4.

Briefly, cloning was done by subcloning the 5.5 kb 91A3VHDJ fragment into the EcoRI restriction endonuclease site of the pUC19 plasmid. Two unique restriction endonuclease sites (NcoI and ApaI, 638 bp apart,) surrounding the D region were identified. The primers P1 and P3, shown in Fig. 4, are exactly complementary to their corresponding strands. However P2 matches with its complementary strand down to the last nucleotide 5' of the D region (filled part of the bar).

The remaining 30 nucleotides (hatched part of the bar) are those of the NP epitope. Primer P4 contains nucleotides complementary to the corresponding strand down to the last nucleotide 5' of the D region. The remaining unmatched nucleotides correspond to 30 bases of the NP epitope. An SpeI restriction endonuclease site was created within the overlapping nucleotides between P2 and P4.

Using polymerase chain reaction, two fragments were produced. In one set of reactions, the annealing of the P3 and P4 primers to the plasmid resulted in the production of 570 bp fragment. In another set of reactions, the annealing of P1 and P2 to plasmid provided a 326 bp fragment. To delete the NP overlapping sequences, both fragments were digested with SpeI. The ligation of fragments, sharing each half of the NP epitope, generated an 870 bp fragment containing the 45 bp NP epitope inserted in-frame. The following steps consist of digesting both the original pUC19-VH DJ91A3 and the 870 bp fragment with the restriction endonucleases NcoI and ApaI. The ligation of the 656 bp fragment into the digested plasmid provides a vector possessing the coding region of the NP epitope instead of the D segment. The 5.5 kb EcoRI VH-NP.J fragment was then subcloned into the EcoRI restriction endonuclease site of the expression vector.

Cotransfection was done using the gene pulsar transfection apparatus according to the manufacturer's instructions (Biorad). Cotransfection of the pSV2gpt-91A3-VHNPJ-CIgG2b and the pSV2neo-91A3LY plasmids into the non-secreting myeloma cell line SP2/0 and selection with mycophenolic acid and geneticin (G418) resulted in the synthesis and secretion of the 91A3-NP chimeric antibody.

## 7.2. The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Contains The NP Epitope

The results presented in Tables 1 and 2 show that chimeric immunoglobulin bearing the influenza virus NP epitope bound rabbit anti-NP antibodies, indicating that the NP epitope had been successfully inserted into the 91A3 antibody. Further, the chimeric immunoglobulin exhibited substantially diminished binding to arsonate, presumably because the D segment, which plays an important role in the binding of arsonate, was replaced with viral NP peptide.

TABLE 1

Immunochemical Properties of Immunoglobulins  
Produced by SP2/0 Coinfected with  
pSV2gpt-91A3gpt-91A3V-NP-J and pSV2neo-91A3L

| Binding to             | 91A3HL-NP        | 91A3HL       |
|------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Ars BSA                | 15,445 $\pm$ 101 | 792 $\pm$ 22 |
| Rabbit Antimouse IgG2b | 42,724 $\pm$ 127 | 41,422       |

Binding to arsonate was determined by incubation of 10 ng of antibody on a microtiter plate coated with either arsonate BSA or BSA alone and bound antibodies were revealed with  $^{125}\text{I}$  rat antimouse  $\kappa$  antibody. Binding to anti-isotype antibody was performed by incubation of 10 ng of antibodies on plates coated with rat antimouse  $\kappa$  mAb and bound antibody was revealed using  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat antimouse IgG2b antibodies.

**TABLE 2**  
**Binding Properties of 91A3 Chimeric Immunoglobulin**  
 (in cpm)

|   |                     |                         |                    |
|---|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 5 | Binding to          | 91A3HL-NP<br>(chimeric) | 91A3HL<br>(parent) |
|   | Arsonate BSA<br>101 | 792 $\pm$ 22            | 15,445 $\pm$       |
|   | Anti-NP antibodies  | 5,616 $\pm$ 217         | 1,246 $\pm$ 76     |

10 Binding to arsonate-BSA was carried out as described above. Binding to rabbit anti-NP antibodies was assessed by incubating transfectoma supernatants on microtiter plates coated with affinity chromatography purified anti-NP antibodies and bound antibodies were revealed using  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat antimouse IgG2b.

15 7.3. The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Activates CTLs

NP-specific CTL were able to kill SP2/0 transfected with chimeric immunoglobulin gene, indicating that the NP epitope was expressed on the cell surface, as in cells infected with the virus.

20 NP-specific cytotoxic T cell clones were generated from BALB/c mice immunized with PR8 influenza virus and expanded in vitro with irradiated spleen cells coated with 5  $\mu\text{g}$  NP 147-161 peptide. The cytotoxicity assay was carried out by incubating  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ -  
 25 labeled target cells and NP-specific CTL at 10:1 E/T ratio for 4 hours.

The data in Table 3 (panel A) show that the CTL clone is able to kill PR8 and X31 influenza virus infected P815 cells (H-2<sup>d</sup>) as well as P815 cells coated with NP 147-161 peptide. No significant killing was  
 30 seen with P815 cells coated with irrelevant NP 365-379 peptide (IASNENMDAMESSTS) (SEQ ID NO:27) known to be recognized in association with H-2D<sup>b</sup> by C57BL/6 CTL. Panel B shows the ability of NP specific CTL to kill

-50-

SP2/0 cells, transfected with the 91A3 heavy chain gene carrying the NP 147-161 sequence (SP2/0-91A3H-NP147-161). The CTLs also killed cells cotransfected with 91A3H-NP147-161 and wild-type 91A3 light chain gene (91A3HL-NP147-161). The CTLs were not able to lyse SP2/0 transfected with wild-type, 91A3H, 91A3L or 91A3HL genes. However, SP2/0 transfected with wild type H and L gene (91A3HL) and coated with NP147-161 were killed by the CTLs.

10

TABLE 3

Killing of SP2/0 cells transfected with plasmid carrying the  $V_H$ -NP chimeric gene ( $V_{HC}$ ), by NP-specific CTL

| 15 | Target Cells                         | % Specific<br>(1) | $^{51}\text{Cr}$ release<br>(2) |
|----|--------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
|    | A P815                               | 14                | 12                              |
|    | P815 coated with NP147-161           | 77                | 49                              |
|    | P815 coated with NP365-379           | 14                | 10                              |
| 20 | P815 infected with PR8               | 59                | 51                              |
|    | P815 infected with X31               | 77                | 64                              |
|    | P815 infected with B Lee             | 19                | 9                               |
|    | B SP2/0                              | ND*               | 2                               |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3L                        | 9                 | ND                              |
| 25 | SP2/0 / 91A3HL coated with NP147-161 | 30                | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3HL coated with NP365-379 | 7                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3H                        | 2                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3HL                       | 4                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3H-NP147-161              | 44                | 39                              |
| 30 | SP2/0 / 91A3HL-NP147-161             | 28                | 21                              |

\* ND = not done

These results clearly show that cells transfected with chimeric immunoglobulin genes bearing an epitope of influenza virus recognized by CTL are



-51-

killed by CTL as are influenza infected cells or cells artificially (in vitro) coated with peptide.

In further experiments we found that SP2/0 cells or even BALB/c spleen cells that were pulsed with  
5 soluble 91A3HL-NP147-161 (also designated Ig-NP) and labelled with  $^{151}\text{Cr}$  were not killed by the specific CTL. This is in agreement with the general observation that only proteins synthesized by the target cells themselves are presented by MHC class I molecules and  
10 recognized by CTLs. This is because they are processed in a compartment that allows the peptides to be transported to the endoplasmic reticulum where they bind MHC class I antigen. Soluble Ig-NP is processed in the endosomal compartment and therefore the NP147-161  
15 generated from it will not be able to encounter MHC class I antigen.

8. Example: Induction Of Antibodies To HIV 1 By  
Immunization Of Baboons With  
Chimeric Immunoglobulin Molecules

8.1. Preparation Of Chimeric Immunoglobulin

5 Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) mutagenesis  
as described in Zaghouani, H. et al., J. Immunol., 148,  
3604-3609 and Zaghouani et al., 1993, Science, 259,  
224-227 was used to create  $V_H$  genes encoding HIV-1  
sequences described in Example 6 (a) and (d) above.

10 These chimeric  $V_H$  genes as well as the wild  
type 91A3  $V_H$  gene were subcloned into the EcoRI site  
upstream of the exons encoding a human  $\gamma 1$  constant  
region within the plasmid pSV2AHgptDNSV<sub>H</sub>-hC $\gamma 1$  as  
described in Dange, J.C. et al. EMBO J. 7, 1994-1988.  
15 (1988) from which the EcoRI dansyl (DNS)  $V_H$  gene was  
cut out. Thus, three constructs were generated:  
pSV2AHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC $\gamma 1$  carries nucleotide sequences  
encoding the consensus V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (Example 1(a)) in  
place of the D segment; pSV2AHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC $\gamma 1$ ,  
20 carries nucleotide sequences encoding the V<sub>3</sub>M peptide  
(Example 1(d)) instead of the D segment; and  
pSV2AHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-D-hC $\gamma 1$ , carries nucleotide sequences  
encoding the natural D segment. In each plasmid, the  
nucleotide sequences encoding the HIV peptide and  
25 surrounding regions were determined and confirm their  
insertion in the correct frame.

Expression of these [murine 91A3V<sub>H</sub>]-[human  $\gamma 1$   
constant region] heavy chain genes with a [murine  
91A3V<sub>L</sub>]-[human K constant region] light chain was  
30 accomplished as follows: The 8 kb BamHI fragment  
encoding the entire 91A3 light chain gene as described  
in Sanz et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84, 1085-  
1989 (1987) was subcloned into the BamHI site of pUC19  
plasmid. Subsequently, a Hind III fragment  
35 encompassing the light chain promoter and the variable  
region coding sequences was cut out from this plasmid

and subcloned into the Hind III site of pSV184ΔHneoDNSV<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> (upstream of the gene encoding a human kappa constant region) from which the dansyl V<sub>K</sub> (DNSV<sub>K</sub>) was excised as described in Oi, V.T. & Morrison, S.C., Bio Techniques, 4 214-221 (1986). This plasmid which will encode a murine 91A3 V<sub>K</sub>-human C<sub>K</sub> light chain is designated pSV184ΔHneo91A3<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub>. Gene cloning, plasmid purification, hybridization, and DNA fragment separation and elution from agarose gels were carried as described in Zaghoulani et al., J. Immunol., 148, 3604-3609 (1992). Nucleotide sequencing was carried out by the dideoxy method using a Sequenase kit available from U.S. Biochem according to the manufacture's instructions. The plasmids pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC<sub>γ</sub>1, pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC<sub>γ</sub>1, pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-D-hC<sub>γ</sub>1, were separately cotransfected with pSV184ΔHneo91A3V<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> into the non-Ig secreting murine myeloma B cell line, SP2/0, by electroporation (220 volts, 960 μFarads) as described in Zaghoulani et al., J. Immunol., 148, 3604-3609 (1992) and Zaghoulani et al., Science, 259, 224-227 (1993). Transfectants expressing both heavy and light chains were doubly selected using mycophenolic acid and geneticin as described in Zaghoulani et al., 1992, J. Immunol. 148:3604-3609.

## 8.2. Results

### Immunochemical properties of Ig-peptide chimeras.

Plasmids pSV2ΔH-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-hC<sub>γ</sub>1, pSV2ΔII-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC<sub>γ</sub>1, and pSV2ΔII-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC<sub>γ</sub>1 were separately co-transfected with pSV184ΔH-neo-91A3V<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> into the non-Ig secreting murine myeloma B cell line, SP2/0, and Ig producing transfectants were doubly selected using G418 and mycophenolic acid. As indicated in Figure 7, three different Ig molecules

were generated in which the heavy and light chain variable regions are of the murine 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody while the constant regions are derived from human  $\gamma 1$  and kappa chains. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C carries V<sub>3</sub>C peptide in place of the D segment within the CDR3 loop of the V<sub>H</sub> gene, and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M carries V<sub>3</sub>M peptide in place of the D segment. Ig-W is a control molecule encoded by unmodified genes, and therefore carries the parental D segment. These Igs were affinity purified on anti-human kappa mAb column and assayed for chain assembly and HIV peptide expression. When Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-W are captured by an anti-human kappa mAb, they bind <sup>125</sup>I-goat anti-human Fc $\gamma$ 1 antibodies to the same extent indicating that the replacement of the D segment with V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M preserved the Ig structure without affecting chain assembly or the overall folding of the molecule (Figure 7a). The control molecule Ig-HA which is entirely murine Ig did not bind to anti-human antibodies. Furthermore, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M but not Ig-W or Ig-HA bind rabbit antibodies specific for either V<sub>3</sub>C (Figure 7b) or V<sub>3</sub>M (Figure 7c) peptides. These results indicate that V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M peptides borne by Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, respectively, are exposed and preserved their antigenicity when expressed in the CDR3 loop of Ig.

**Induction of HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies in baboons immunized with chimeric Igs.** Groups of baboons were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, or control Ig-W and serum samples collected before and after immunization were tested for the presence of antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M peptides and to a negative control peptide, 519-535 corresponding to the conserved amino acid residues 519-535 of HIV-1 111B isolate. The results of representative baboons are illustrated in Figure 8. Baboons that were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M produced antibodies to the gp120 V<sub>3</sub> loop

-55-

derived peptides while those immunized with Ig-W did not. These antibodies are specific for V<sub>3</sub> peptides and did not bind 519-535 peptide. While Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M induced antibodies that react only with V<sub>3</sub>M peptide, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C induced cross-reactive antibodies that bind to both V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides. A significant level of antibodies was detectable at day 65 (14 days after the third immunization). However, higher antibody levels were obtained at day 164 (14 days after the fifth immunization). While antibodies from rabbits immunized with V<sub>3</sub>C-KLH or V<sub>3</sub>M-KLH conjugates react with both V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M peptides, the antibodies from the baboon immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M react only with V<sub>3</sub>M peptide. This may be related to individual variation in the response, to a different folding of V<sub>3</sub>M peptide in Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M versus in V<sub>3</sub>M-KLH conjugate and/or to a weaker response of the baboon probably due to poorer T cell help.

In further experiments we investigated whether these serum antibodies from baboons immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub> chimeras could bind native HIV-1 gp120 envelope protein. The results depicted in Figure 9, indicate that serum from baboons immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M bind a 120 kd protein when incubated with MN virus lysates as does the control human serum from HIV-1 infected individual. A rabbit anti-serum raised against peptide 503-535 binds to the envelope protein of both MN and IIIB isolates, while the baboon serum did not bind to gp 120 of IIIB isolate. No binding to either MN or IIIB proteins is obtained when the lysates are incubated with serum from a baboon immunized with Ig-W. These results indicate that immunization of baboons with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M induces antibodies that bind native envelope protein of HIV-1.

To investigate the effect that baboon anti-serum could have on HIV-1 virus infection of susceptible cell lines we carried out in vitro

-56-

neutralization assays using MN and IIIB isolates as infectious material and Sup T1 as target cells. As can be seen in Figure 10, anti-serum (bleed day 164, 14 day after the fifth immunization) from baboons immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M neutralize HIV-1 MN but not IIIB isolate, while anti-serum from a baboon immunized with Ig-W failed to neutralize any of the two isolates. Significant HIV-1 MN neutralizing activity was detected in samples collected at days 101 (36 days after the third immunization), 136 (14 days after the fourth immunization, and 164 (14 days after the fifth immunization). The dose effect relationship between neutralization and serum dilution indicates that neutralization is dependent of the amount of serum antibodies.

In vitro production of antibodies specific for HIV-1 derived peptides by human lymphocytes stimulated with Ig-peptide chimeras. Since Ig-peptide chimeras carrying HIV-1 envelope derived epitopes were able to induce HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies in baboons, we carried out in vitro experiments to determine whether human lymphocytes could similarly produce anti-HIV-1 antibodies subsequent to in-vitro stimulation with the chimeras. In preliminary experiments we tested serum from 20 HIV-1 infected asymptomatic patients for presence of antibodies that specifically react with V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides. Among these, 9 individuals had antibodies that bound both HIV-1 envelope derived V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides (not shown). Two of these individuals, CE and SLF, and one non-infected, healthy subject control were selected for study. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from these individuals were incubated with the Ig-peptide chimeras either coupled or uncoupled to tetanus toxoid (TT) for a period of 7 to 10 days and culture super-

natants were assayed for presence of antibodies to HIV-1-derived peptides. As indicated in Figure 11, when lymphocytes from patients were incubated with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>-TT or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>, they produced antibodies that bound to both V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides (Figure 11g and H). Incubation with Ig-W did not stimulate the production of antibodies specific for the HIV-1 derived peptides (Figure 11 c and f) indicating a specific stimulation of lymphocytes by the HIV-1 peptide borne by the Ig chimeras. Lymphocytes from the non infected subject (K), did not produce any detectable antibody to the HIV-1 derived peptides indicating that the cells producing the HIV-1 specific antibodies are memory cells that have previously been primed to respond to these epitopes. Optimal antibody production required lower amounts of antigen when the chimeras were coupled to TT suggesting that mobilization of TT specific T cells may have provided help for antibody production.

## 9. Example: Derivatization Of Chimeric Immunoglobulins With PEG

### 9.1. Materials And Methods

**Mice.** Six week old BALB/c mice were purchased from Jackson Laboratory (Harbor, ME).

**Antigens.** The synthetic peptide HA110-120 (SFERFEIFPKE) (SEQ ID NO:7) corresponds to amino acid residues 110-120 of HA of PR8 influenza A virus (Zaghouani et al., 1993, Science 259:224), NP 147-161 (TYQRTALVVRTGMDP) (SEQ ID NO:15) corresponds to residues 147-161 of NP of PR8 influenza A virus (Zaghouani et al., 1992, J.Immunol., 148: 3604.) and V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (RKSIHIGPGRAFYTTEII) (SEQ ID NO:1) corresponds to a consensus sequence predicted from the comparison of the V<sub>3</sub> cysteine bridged loop sequences of gp120 envelope proteins of 245 HIV-1 isolates (see above). Peptides were synthesized and RP-HPLC purified

-58-

at IAF Biochem (Laval, Quebec, Canada). KLH and BSA conjugates of the synthetic peptides were prepared using standard techniques.

5 Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were genetically engineered in our laboratory as described above. Ig-HA is a BALB/c IgG2b expressing in the CDR3 loop a T cell epitope (HA110-120) from the HA of PR8 influenza A virus. Ig-NP, is also a BALB/c IgG2b expressing in CDR3 loop the NP147-161 CTL-epitope. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C is a mouse  
10 variable-human  $\gamma$ 1/k constant regions expressing within the heavy chain CDR3 loop a B cell epitope from the V<sub>3</sub> cysteine bridged loop of the envelope protein of HIV-1. Ig-W, is the wild type mouse V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> variable-human  $\gamma$ 1/k constant regions used as a control for Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C.  
15 Ig-HA and Ig-NP, were affinity purified from culture supernatant on a rat anti-mouse k chain-sepharose column. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-W were affinity purified on a mouse anti-human k chain antibody (HP605)-sepharose column.

20 PR8 influenza A virus was prepared from allantoic fluid of embryonated eggs on a sucrose gradient. An UV inactivated PR8 virus was used in these experiments.

#### Derivatization of chimeric Ig with mPEG.

25 Ig-HA, Ig-NP, and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (see above) were derivatized with 2,4,6-trichloro-s-triazine activated mPEG 5,000 (Sigma) and purified to homogeneity. Briefly, a 50 times molar excess of mPEG was added to 10 mg of chimeric Ig in 10 ml of 0.1M tetraborate  
30 buffer, pH 9.6. The mixture was stirred vigorously for four hours at room temperature and the preparations were concentrated to 1.5 ml in CENTREX UF-2 ultraconcentrators of 100,000 MWCO (Schleicher & Schuell). The residual unreacted mPEG was removed by  
35 size exclusion chromatography on Aca44 Ultrogel column and homogeneous populations of Ig-mPEG with 6-8%



derivatized lysines were isolated by anion exchange HPLC on Q300 column (for details of procedure, see Example Section 10, below). The degree of mPEG derivatization was estimated by fluorescamine assay as described (Cunningham-Rundles et al., 1992, J.Immunol.Methods 152: 177). Briefly, graded amounts (0.25, 0.5 and 1 $\mu$ g) of Ig-HA-mPEG, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG conjugates and native Ig-HA or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, were dissolved in 25  $\mu$ l of PBS and mixed with an equal volume of fresh fluorescamine in acetone (150 g/ml). Samples were incubated for 5 min at room temperature and then adjusted to 1 ml with PBS. The absorbance was then measured at 475 nm emission versus 390 nm excitation and the percent of pegylated lysines was estimated according to the following formula  $I-(OD_{475} \text{ Ig-mPEG} / OD_{475} \text{ native Ig}) \times 100$ . The homogeneity of the conjugates was confirmed by SDS-PAGE and agarose electrophoresis.

**Blood circulation.** Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG preparations (100 $\mu$ g in 100 $\mu$ l of PBS) were radiolabeled with <sup>125</sup>I using the chloramine method and the free iodine was then removed by gel filtration on PD10 columns (Pharmacia). Groups of three BALB/c mice were injected i.v. with 200 $\mu$ l of PBS containing  $20 \times 10^6$  cpm (4 $\mu$ g) of <sup>125</sup>I-labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. Fifteen minutes later (time required for uniform distribution of labeled Ig) the mice were bled and the radioactivity in 20 $\mu$ l of serum was counted. Total radioactivity per mouse was estimated on the basis that 7.3% of body weight is blood and 55% of the blood volume is serum (Klibanov et al., 1991, Biochim.Biophys.Acta 1062: 142). The radioactivity estimated at 15 min was considered as the total radioactivity injected. To investigate the clearance of Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG, mice were bled 3, 6, 24, 48, 72, and 168 hours after injection. Blood clearance rates were

-60-

expressed for each group as percentage of residual radioactivity at various intervals of time.

Organ distribution. To study the tissue distribution of the native Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates, two groups of seven mice each (15-17g weight) were injected i.v. with 200 $\mu$ l PBS containing  $20 \times 10^6$  cpm of  $^{125}$ I-labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. Mice were bled after 15 min and the blood radioactivity was estimated as above. Fragments of liver, spleen, lung and kidney were then resected by 3, 6, 24, 48, 72, and 168 hours after inoculation and the radioactivity was measured in a  $\gamma$  counter. Tissue distribution was expressed as index of distribution (%ID) of  $^{125}$ I-Ig-HA or  $^{125}$ I-Ig-HA-mPEG. ID represents the percentage of radioactivity per gram of wet organ versus the radioactivity measured in blood at 15 min after injection (Kitamura et al., 1990, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.: 1387).

Western blot analysis. To investigate in vivo proteolysis of the native and pegylated Ig-HA, blood samples from mice injected with  $^{125}$ I-Ig-HA or  $^{125}$ I-Ig-HA-mPEG as for the clearance studies, were analyzed by SDS-PAGE under non reducing conditions. Briefly, serum samples (5 $\mu$ l) collected at various intervals of time were electrophoresed on 8 to 17% polyacrylamide gradient gels (ExcelGels, Pharmacia) for 2 hours, at 150 volts and 40°C using a Multiphore II system (Pharmacia). Separated proteins were electrotransferred from the gel onto PVDF membranes (0.22 $\mu$ , Millipore, Waters Co.) for 30 minutes at 450 mAmps. Membranes were dried and exposed to Kodak X-OMAT films overnight at -70°C.

In vitro T cell proliferation assay. 2PK3 B lymphoma cells (H-2d) were used as APCs. Irradiated (2,200 rads) APCs ( $10^4$ ) were incubated for 48 hours in round bottom 96-well plates with graded amounts of Ig-

HA, Ig-HAmPEG or Ig-NP-mPEG, and  $2 \times 10^4$  of HA110-120 specific T hybridoma cells LD1-24 (Haberman et al., J. Immunol. 145:3087). Supernatants were then harvested and IL-3 production as a measure of T cell proliferation was determined using  $1.5 \times 10^4$  of IL-3 dependent DA- I cells and the calorimetric MTT assay (Zaghouani et al., Science 259:224, Mosmann, 1983, J. Immunol. Methods 65: 55).

In vivo T cell proliferation assay. The proliferative response of lymph node cells from BABL/c mice immunized with IG-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG were assessed for [ $^3$ H]-thymidine incorporation. Four groups of seven mice each were immunized subcutaneously at the base of the tail and in the foot pads with  $100\mu\text{g}$  of Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG emulsified in either  $200\mu\text{l}$  of PBS or  $200\mu\text{l}$  of PBS/CFA (1:1 v/v). Ten days later, the draining lymph nodes were collected and the cells were cultured in flat bottom 96-well microtiter plates ( $2 \times 10^5$  cells per well) with 0.5, 1, 5, and  $10\mu\text{g/ml}$  of HA110-120, NP147-161, Ig-HA, Ig-NP, UV-inactivated PR8 virus, ConA ( $1\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) or no antigen. Cultures were set up in quadruplets from pooled lymph node cells, incubated under standard conditions for 5 days (or 3 days in the case of ConA), and pulsed for the last 18 hours with  $1\mu\text{Ci}$  of [ $^3$ H]-thymidine per well. The cells were then harvested and the radioactivity was measured in a  $\beta$  scintillation counter. The mean of cpm obtained in the absence of antigen was subtracted from the mean of cpm obtained in the presence of antigens.

Radioimmunoassay. Detection of the anti- $V_3C$  peptide antibodies in mice sera was carried out by radioimmunoassay as follows: microtiter plates were coated with  $50\mu\text{l}$  of PBS containing  $5\mu\text{g/ml}$  of  $V_3C$  peptide coupled to BSA ( $V_3C$ -BSA), BSA, or NP147-161-BSA for 18 hours at  $40^\circ\text{C}$ . The plates were extensively washed with PBS and then blocked with 3% BSA in PBS at

room temperature. After 4 hours the plates were washed with PBS and serial serum dilutions (50 $\mu$ l) in 1% BSA-PBS were added. The plates were incubated for 2 hours at 37°C. After washing with PBS-0.05% Tween 20, bound antibodies were revealed by incubating the plates for 2 hours at room temperature with 5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cpm of <sup>125</sup>I-rat anti-mouse k chain mAb. Plates were then washed and bound radioactivity was measured in a  $\gamma$  counter. The amount of anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies in mice sera was estimated by extrapolation on a standard curve constructed with affinity purified mouse polyclonal anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies. These polyclonal anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies were obtained from BALB/c mice immunized with V<sub>3</sub>C-KLH conjugate (100  $\mu$ g) in CFA and then boosted weekly, three times with V<sub>3</sub>C-KLH conjugate (50 $\mu$ g) in incomplete Freund adjuvant (IFA). The antibodies were affinity purified on a V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA-sepharose column.

Detection of anti-human isotypic antibodies in mice sera was carried out by radioimmunoassay as follows: microtiter plates were coated with 50 $\mu$ l of PBS containing 2 $\mu$ g/ml of Ig-W for 18 hours at 40°C. The plates were then treated as above. The amount of mouse anti-human Ig antibodies was estimated by extrapolation on a standard curve constructed with a stoichiometric mixture of mouse anti-human  $\gamma$ 1 mAb (Zymed Laboratory) and HP6053 mouse anti-human kappa mAb (ATCC).

## 9.2. RESULTS

### Preparation of homogeneous populations of pegylated Ig chimeras.

Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were mildly pegylated and homogeneous conjugates with 6-8% mPEG substitution of the lysine residues were purified as described in Section 10, below. The conjugate preparations were rendered free of residual adducts such as free hydrolyzed mPEG and highly conjugated or unconjugated Ig by size exclusion chromatography performed on ACA44

Ultrogel column followed by anion-exchange HPLC on Q300 column. Homogeneous populations of Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG conjugates with 6-8% mPEG substituted lysine residues as determined by fluorescamine assay, were  
5 used for further investigations.

**Blood clearance and tissue distribution of native and pegylated Ig chimeras.**

*Clearance rates.* The clearance rates of Ig-HA-mPEG from blood circulation were analyzed in  
10 parallel to those of the native Ig-HA. <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-HA were injected i.v. into BALB/c mice and the radioactivity was measured in blood samples collected at various intervals of time. As depicted in Figure 12, the native Ig-HA was cleared at 48 hours  
15 after injection while Ig-HA-mPEG persisted in peripheral blood up to 7 days. Ig-HA-mPEG showed a two phase clearance characterized by an initial rapid decline followed by a much slower decline.

*Resistance to in vivo proteolysis.* Serum  
20 samples from mice injected with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG were collected at various intervals of time and analyzed by Western blot analysis. Both native and pegylated Ig-HA showed important degradation between 6 and 24 hours after injection. By 48 hours,  
25 the majority of the proteolytic products were cleared from the blood, and by 72 hours intact Ig molecules were detected only in samples from mice injected with Ig-HA-mPEG (Figure 13).

*Tissue distribution.* We carried out kinetic  
30 studies to estimate the amount of radioactivity in various tissues at various intervals of time after injection of the radiolabeled conjugates. The tissue distribution of <sup>125</sup>I-Ig-HA and <sup>125</sup>I-Ig-HA-mPEG was studied in liver, spleen, lung and kidney resected at  
35 0.25, 3, 6, 24, 48, 72 and 168 hours after injection.

As illustrated in Figure 14, both Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG are taken up by the various organs to the same extent but the amounts of Ig-HA-mPEG retained in the organs were higher than those of native Ig-HA. It should be noted that in lungs, while Ig-HA-mPEG was still present by 168 hours, the native Ig-HA was cleared by 72 hours. Overall, these results indicate that pegylated Ig-HA molecules persist longer than the native Ig-HA in the blood, and higher amounts of the pegylated Ig-HA were retained in organs with lymphoid tissues.

**The cellular immune response to HA110-120 peptide expressed by pegylated Ig-HA chimera.**

*In vitro* activation of HA110-120 specific T cell hybridoma. To assess the effect of mPEG derivatization on the immunogenicity of Ig-HA, we studied *in vitro* T cell activation by native Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG. This was carried out using HA110-120 specific T hybridoma cells, LD1-24 and measurement of IL-3 release by these cells subsequent to activation by the various antigens. Figure 15 shows that Ig-HA-mPEG activates the specific T cells to the same extent as native Ig-HA. This indicates that mPEG derivatization of the chimeric Ig did not affect the delivery and subsequent presentation of the HA100-120 peptide to the T cells. No activation was observed with pegylated Ig-NP, a molecule carrying a CTL epitope from NP of PR8 influenza A virus instead of the HA110-120 helper epitope.

*In vivo* priming of HA110-120 specific T cells. In a previous work, we showed that immunization of BALB/c mice with Ig-HA in CFA primed animals to mount a specific proliferative response (Zaghouani, et al., 1993, Science 259:224). In this study, we compared the immunogenicity of native and pegylated Ig-HA administered in either saline or CFA (Figure 16). Lymph node cells from BALB/c mice were harvested ten

-65-

days after immunization and stimulated in vitro for 5 days with various antigens. Immunization with native Ig-HA in CFA primed T cells for in vitro proliferative response upon incubation with Ig-HA, UV-inactivated PR8 virus and HA110-120 peptide but not Ig-NP or NP 147-161 peptide (Figure 16b). Similar responses were obtained when the mice were primed with Ig-HA-mPEG in CFA (Figure 16d).

More striking, a strong and specific proliferative response was obtained when the mice were primed with Ig-HA-mPEG in saline (Figure 16c). No response was detected when the mice were immunized with native Ig-HA in saline (Figure 16a). This strongly suggest that the requirement for adjuvant was obviated when Ig-HA was derivatized with mPEG 5,000.

**Effect Of Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C derivatization with  
mPEG on the antibody response to  
V<sub>3</sub>C peptide and to Ig-xenogeneic determinants**

The kinetics of antibody response elicited by native and pegylated Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C was studied in BALB/c mice following different immunization schedules (see the legend for Figure 17). As mentioned above, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C is a chimeric molecule made up of murine V<sub>H</sub> gene expressing the consensus V<sub>3</sub>C peptide, murine V<sub>K</sub> gene and human  $\gamma$ 1 and  $\kappa$  constant region genes. Therefore, we measured by RIA the antibody response against the V<sub>3</sub>C epitope as well as against isotypic determinants of human constant regions.

The study showed a sharp increase of the antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C peptide after immunization with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in CFA followed by a boost in IFA (Figure 17a). More importantly, immunization of animals with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in saline induced a V<sub>3</sub>C specific antibody response (Figures 17b, 17c, and 17d). This response was slightly higher in animals immunized with

Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG. The antibody response was stronger when the animals were immunized 3 times in saline (Figure 17b versus Figures 17c and 17d).

5 The animals immunized with native chimeric Ig in CFA showed high antibody response to isotypic determinants of human constant regions (Figure 17e). However, while immunization in saline with native Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C also induced a strong anti-human antibody response, immunization with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in saline elicited no  
10 significant response (Figures 17f, 17g and 17h).

#### 10. EXAMPLE: PURIFICATION OF PEGYLATED IMMUNOGLOBULIN

During pegylation of a protein, various degrees of derivatization may occur as a consequence of the micro heterogeneity of the protein, the  
15 distribution of both the number and the position of attachment of PEG units, the inherent polydiversity of PEG polymers, and microenvironmental conditions of the reaction. In addition, dioxy PEG that can crosslink proteins may be present in commercial preparations as a  
20 result of hydrolysis of the ethylene oxide monomers during the polymerization process (Selisko et al., 1993, J. Chromatogr. 641: 71-79; Harris et al., 1985, in "Partitioning in Aqueous Two-Phase Systems", D.E. Brooks and D. Fisher (Editors), Academic Press,  
25 Orlando, Fl., p.593). Thus, protein-mPEG preparations may contain species of highly pegylated and/or crosslinked proteins in addition to the residual adducts. Purification of homogeneous populations of conjugates is therefore required prior to their use in  
30 biological systems. Purification of protein-PEG conjugates has generally consisted of a single step chromatographic removal of free PEG polymers (Kitamura, et al., 1991 Cancer Res., 51: 4310-43115; Cunningham-R.A. et al., 1992, J. Immunol. Methods, 152: 177-190;  
35 Snider et al., 1992, J. Chromatogr. 599: 141-155;



Jackson, et al., 1987, Anal-Biochem. 165:114-127).  
Herein, we describe a two step procedure able to remove  
completely the residual adducts and to isolate  
homogeneous populations of mPEG derivatized  
5 immunoglobulins.

#### 10.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

##### CHEMICALS

AIgs (Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C) were generated in our  
laboratory as described above. PhastSystem electro-  
10 phoresis apparatus, PhastGels 4-15% gradient of poly-  
acrylamide and cyanogen bromide activated Sepharose CL-  
4B were purchased from Pharmacia, LKB. Aca44 Ultrogel  
and dialysis bags of 75,000 MWCO were from Spectrum,  
Co. Ultra concentrators of 100,000 MWCO (CENTREX UF-2,  
15 2ml volume) were from Schleicher & Schuell. Rat  
hybridoma cells secreting monoclonal anti-murine k  
chain antibodies and HP6053 mouse hybridoma producing  
anti-human k chain antibodies were from ATCC. The Q300  
HPLC column (250 x 4.6 mm, 300 micron particle size)  
20 was from Rainin. Nessler reagent and 2,4,6-trichloro-  
s-triazine activated monomethoxypolyethylene glycol MW  
5,000 (mPEG 5,000) were from Sigma. The agarose gels  
(Titan Gel High-Resolution Protein kit) were from  
Helena Laboratories.

25

##### EXPERIMENTAL

Purification of AIgs. IgHA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were  
affinity purified on a rat anti-murine k chain and  
mouse anti-human k chain antibody-Sepharose columns,  
respectively. Affinity purified AIgs were equilibrated  
30 in 0.1M sodium tetraborate, pH 9.6 and concentrated to  
1 mg/ml by ultracentrifugation using tubes of 100,000  
MWCO.

**Derivatization of AIGs with mPEG.** 10 mg of

each AIG were derivatized with 2,4,6-trichloro-s-triazine activated mPEG 5,000 as described in Jackson, et al., 1987, Anal-Biochem. 165:114-127. Briefly, a 50  
5 times molar excess of mPEG was added to 10 mg AIGs in 10 ml of 0.1M tetraborate buffer, pH 9.6. The mixture was stirred vigorously for four hours at room temperature. The conjugate preparations were concentrated to 1.5 ml in tubes of 100,000 MWCO and  
10 further purified.

**Chromatographic purification of AIG-mPEG conjugates.** AIG-mPEG preparations were applied on ACA44 Ultrogel filtration column (80 x 1.6cm) equilibrated with 0.1M  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$ , pH 8.5 and flow rate of  
15 0.4 ml/min. Fractions were collected at 4 min interval, dried by speed vacuum centrifugation and resuspended in 0.5 ml of 5mM sodium-acetate, pH 5. Each fraction was then analyzed for protein content by Biuret micro assay, and for the presence of free  
20 hydrolyzed mPEG by Nessler's reagent as described (Wilkinson et al., 1987, Immunol.Lett. 15: 17-22). Fractions of the conjugates free of hydrolyzed mPEG were then rechromatographed on a Q300 anion-exchange HPLC column equilibrated with 5 mM sodium acetate, pH 5  
25 using a 45 minutes linear gradient from 5 to 500 mM sodium acetate, pH 5, and flow rate of 0.5 ml/min. Fractions from Q300 column were dialyzed in Spectrapor bags with 75,000 MWCO against PBS and concentrated in CENTREX UF-2 tubes.

30 **Electrophoretic analyses of AIG-mPEG conjugates.** Homogeneity of AIG-mPEG conjugate was analyzed by SDS-PAGE and residual mPEG was detected by

electrophoresis on agarose gels. The SDS-PAGE was performed in non reducing conditions as described by Laemmli (Laemmli, 1970, Nature (London), 227: 680-685). Briefly, Samples (5  $\mu$ g) were resuspended in 5  $\mu$ l of sample buffer (0.1% SDS, 0.1M Tris-HCl 6M urea, pH 8.5) and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. Samples were run on 4-15% gradient PhastGel (Pharmacia) at 250 Volts and 5 Watts for 45 minutes at 15°C. The gel was then fixed and silver stained. Electrophoresis on agarose Titan gels was carried out according to the manufacture's instructions. Samples (10  $\mu$ g in 5  $\mu$ l barbital buffer) were run at 250 Volts for 30 minutes on duplicate gels. One gel was stained with a mixture of 0.1% Coomassie Blue R-250 and 1% Ponceau S, and the second gel was immersed in 20% trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in water for 30 seconds and immediately photo-scanned.

**Fluorescamine assay.** Graded amounts (1, 0.5 and 0.25  $\mu$ g) of AIG-mPEG or AIGs in 25  $\mu$ l of PBS were mixed with equal volume of fresh fluorescamine in acetone (150 g/ml) and incubated for 5 min at room temperature. Samples were then brought to 1 ml with PBS and absorbency was measured at 475 nm emission versus 390 nm excitation. The percent of pegylated primary amines was estimated according to the following formula  $1 - (OD_{475} \text{ AIGs-mPEG} / OD_{475} \text{ AIGs}) \times 100$  (Neville, et al., 1991, presented at the American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists', Sixth Annual Meeting, Washington, DC, Nov. 17-21, 1991). The improved resolution obtained with ammonium bicarbonate may be related to better neutralization of the active charges on gel matrix and therefore lower interactions between free mPEG polymer and the matrix.

**Removal of other residual adducts from the AIG-mPEG conjugates.** Because no one step procedure for the separation of protein-mPEG conjugates from residual adducts is described, we chose a method that includes a

first step removal of hydrolyzed mPEG and a subsequent step that removes other residual adducts such as underivatized or highly derivatized AIGs. Since the size exclusion limit of the AcA44 Ultrogel column is 140 kD, hydrolyzed mPEG can be removed but the other residual adducts can not. The removal of excess PEG is required because it could interfere with the isolation of the conjugates from the other residual adducts in the subsequent anion exchange chromatography step.

Preliminary experiments performed on anion-exchange HPLC columns as a single step of purification, showed poor resolution and low yields even if minimal amounts of sample were applied on the column. In fact, the conjugates showed a broad elution profile as a result of the presence of excess of free polymers which interfere strongly with the binding of conjugates to the anion-exchange matrix. Poor resolution of pegylated proteins was also described when conjugates were separated by charge-reversal capillary zone electrophoresis without previous removal of free PEG (Snider et al., 1992, J. Chromatogr. 599: 141-155; McGoff, et al., 1988, Chem.Pharm.Bull. 36: 3079). It may be important to remove free polymer from the conjugate preparation in order to obtain good resolution in different separating media.

To select homogeneous population of conjugates with 6-8% degree of pegylation, we rechromatographed the conjugates on anion-exchange HPLC column with optimized conditions as described in the experimental section. Figure 18 shows the elution profiles of Ig-HA-mPEG (Figure 18A) and free IG-HA (Figure 18B). In the case of Ig-HA-mPEG, 3 major peaks were eluted from the column and labeled 1, 2, and 3 (Figure 18A). Peak 3 represents free Ig-HA since it elutes at the same salt concentration as the unconjugated control Ig-HA. The material of peak 1 may

-71-

represent highly pegylated AIGs that could not bind to the matrix. Peak 2 seems to contain mildly pegylated Ig-HA as revealed by SDS-PAGE analysis (see below).

Analysis of the homogeneity of AIG-mPEG conjugates. The purity of AIGs-mPEG preparations was further analyzed for the presence of traces of free mPEG and residual adducts performed on agarose and polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, respectively. Although purification of AIGs-mPEG conjugates followed one step purification by size exclusion chromatography, small amounts of free mPEG that could not be detected by Nessler's test may be present in the conjugate preparations. To trace small amounts of free PEG that could interfere with the immunogenicity of the AIGs-mPEG we developed an original, sensitive electrophoretic technique able to detect  $\mu\text{M}$  of free mPEG. Based on the observation that mPEG migrate on agarose to the cathode and can be visualized by TCA precipitation but not by protein dyes, we attempted to trace free mPEG in our preparation by electrophoresis on Titan gel HRT kit followed by TCA precipitation. As can be seen in Figure 19, left panel, Ig-HA-mPEG preparation obtained from the second chromatographic purification (lane 1) like unpegylated Ig-HA preparation (lane 2), did not show detectable amounts of free hydrolyzed mPEG while the preparation collected from the first chromatographic purification contained residual free PEG (lane 4). The amount of free residual mPEG, if any, in the final Ig-HA-mPEG preparation (lane 1) should be lower than  $4 \times 10^{-4}$  M. Calibration experiments indicated that as little as  $4 \times 10^{-4}$  M of mPEG 5,000 can be detected using this technique (lane 3).

When a duplicate gel was stained with Coomassie/Ponceau (Fig. 19, right panel), only Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates were revealed (lanes 1, 2,

respectively) but not free hydrolyzed mPEG (lane 3).

Interestingly, pegylated Ig-HA showed better staining with Ponceau S than unpegylated Ig-HA. The differential staining may be attributed to different ability of the two dyes to access their specific sites on the native protein versus the pegylated one. Using this assay, we also were able to trace free mPEG polymers in preparations of chicken egg ovalbumin-mPEG, BSA-mPEG and bovine gamma globulin-mPEG conjugates.

Although small amounts of PEG polymers can be detected by sensitive techniques such as Childs' assay (Childs, 1975, Microchem. J. 20: 190-192) or Veronese's test (Schiavon, et al., 1990, M. Farmaco., 45(6): 791-795), our electrophoretic technique is able to distinguish free PEG from PEG attached to proteins.

Furthermore we performed SDS-PAGE analysis to investigate the homogeneity of AIGs-mPEG preparations. This was carried out on 4-15% gradient gels (PhastGels, Pharmacia) under non reducing conditions. The results illustrated in Figure 20 show that the final Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG preparation (peak 2 in Figure 18) were purified to homogeneity (lanes 2 and 5 respectively). These preparations do not contain detectable amounts of unpegylated AIGs because no comigration with free Ig-HA (lane 1) or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (lane 4) was observed. They do not contain highly pegylated AIGs either because no material comigrated with samples representing heavily pegylated AIGs (from peak 1 in Figure 18). In summary, we were able to select homogeneous population of AIG-mPEG with 6-8% degree as indicated by these electrophoretic analyses.

The pegylated Ig-HA, showed a long half life and induced strong T cell activation in mice *in vivo*.

Various publications are cited herein which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-73-

## SEQUENCE LISTING

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION

(i) APPLICANT: MOUNT SINAI SCHOOL OF MEDICINE OF THE CITY  
UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK

(ii) TITLE OF THE INVENTION: CHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING  
ANTIGEN BINDING SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 27

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:

(A) ADDRESSEE: Brumbaugh, Graves, Donohue & Raymond  
(B) STREET: 30 Rockefeller Plaza  
(C) CITY: New York  
(D) STATE: NY  
(E) COUNTRY: USA  
(F) ZIP: 10112-0228

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:

(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Diskette  
(B) COMPUTER: IBM Compatible  
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: DOS  
(D) SOFTWARE: FastSEQ Version 1.5

(vi) CURRENT US APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/441,328  
(B) FILING DATE: 15-MAY-1995  
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:  
(B) FILING DATE:

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:

(A) NAME: Clark, Richard S  
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 26,154  
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 29889-165/29528

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:

(A) TELEPHONE: 212-408-2558  
(B) TELEFAX: 212-765-2519  
(C) TELEX:

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1

(iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 301...319  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Envelope Protein gp120

-74-

## (v) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Arg Lys Ser Ile His Ile Gly Pro Gly Arg Ala Phe Tyr Thr Thr Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Glu Ile Ile

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: HA1 hemagglutinin protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

Trp Leu Thr Lys Lys Gly Asp Ser Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: H3 protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Trp Leu Thr Lys Ser Gly Ser Thr Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:



-75-

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: H2 protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Trp Leu Thr Lys Glu Gly Ser Asp Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 11 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Measles Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 404...414
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: F protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

Ile Asn Gln Asp Pro Asp Lys Ile Leu Thr Tyr  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Foot and Mouth Disease Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 141...160
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: VP1 protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Met Asn Ser Ala Pro Asn Leu Arg Gly Asp Leu Gln Lys Val Ala Arg  
1 5 10 15  
Thr Leu Pro

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 11 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid

-76-

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 110...120

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Hemagglutinin Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

Ser Phe Glu Arg Phe Glu Ile Phe Pro Lys Glu  
1 5 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM:

(iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION:

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Tetanus Toxoid Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

Asn Ser Val Asp Asp Ala Leu Ile Asn Ser Thr Lys Ile Tyr Ser Tyr  
1 5 10 15  
Phe Pro Ser Val  
20

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 17 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM:

(iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION:

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Tetanus Toxoid

-77-

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

Pro Glu Ile Asn Gly Lys Ala Ile His Leu Val Asn Asn Glu Ser Ser  
1 5 10 15  
Glu

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 88...103
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: Cytochrome C Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

Ala Asn Glu Arg Ala Asp Leu Ile Ala Tyr Leu Gln Ala Thr Lys  
1 5 10 15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Mycobacteria

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 350...369
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: Heat Shock Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

Asp Gln Val His Phe Gln Pro Leu Pro Pro Ala Val Val Lys Leu Ser  
1 5 10 15  
Asp Ala Leu Ile  
20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 14 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptid

-78-

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Hen

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 48...61

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Egg White Lysozyme

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

Asp Gly Ser Thr Asp Tyr Gly Ile Leu Gln Ile Asn Ser Arg  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 12 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Streptococcus A

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 308...319

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: M Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

Gln Val Glu Lys Ala Leu Glu Glu Ala Asn Ser Lys  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Staphylococcus sp.

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 81...100

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Nuclease Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

Arg Thr Asp Lys Tyr Gly Arg Gly Leu Ala Tyr Ile Tyr Ala Asp Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Lys Met Val Asn  
20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

-79-

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 147...161
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: NP Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thr | Tyr | Gln | Arg | Thr | Arg | Ala | Leu | Val | Arg | Thr | Gly | Met | Asp | Pro |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 30 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: site B of HA

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

CCCCATCCTA GGCAGGAAAA GCCAATTGGT 30

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: site B of HA

-80-

---

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

Trp Leu Thr Glu Asp Glu Gly Ser Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 18 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM:

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

AGCTGAGGAC AAAGAAGA 18

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 47 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM:

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

CCGAAAAGGA GGGATCCTAT CCCAAGACCA CACTGACTGT ACACAAA 47

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 21 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM:

-81-

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

CAAATCACCC AAGTGATGG C 21

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 60 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

GGGATAGGAT CCCTCCTTTT CGGTAAACCA TCCAATCCAT TCCAGCCCCT GTCCAGGCCT  
60

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 24 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 12-35
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV-1 HxB2

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Glu | Leu | Asp | Arg | Trp | Glu | Lys | Ile | Arg | Leu | Arg | Pro | Gly | Gly | Lys | Lys |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Lys | Tyr | Lys | Leu | Lys | His | Ile | Val |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     | 20  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 25 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid

-82-

- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 325-349  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV reverse transcriptase

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Ala | Ile | Phe | Gln | Ser | Ser | Met | Thr | Lys | Ile | Leu | Glu | Pro | Phe | Arg | Lys |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Gln | Asn | Pro | Asp | Ile | Val | Ile | Tyr | Gln |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     | 20  |     |     |     |     | 25  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 301-319  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV gp 120, WMJ2

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Arg | Arg | Ser | Leu | Ser | Ile | Gly | Pro | Gly | Arg | Ala | Phe | Arg | Thr | Arg | Glu |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Ile | Ile | Gly |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 17 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 519-535  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV-1 IIIB



-83-

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

Ala Val Gly Ile Gly Ala Leu Phe Leu Gly Phe Leu Gly Ala Ala Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Ser

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:26:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: site B of HA

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:26:

Trp Leu Thr Glu Lys Glu Gly Ser Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:27:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 365-379
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: NP protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:27:

Ile Ala Ser Asn Glu Asn Met Asp Ala Met Glu Ser Ser Thr Ser  
1 5 10 15

---

Claims

## WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology comprising a parent immunoglobulin molecule, wherein a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule is deleted and replaced with a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.
2. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a CTL epitope.
3. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a helper T cell epitope.
4. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the CDR loop is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment).
5. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the CDR loop is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.
6. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4, wherein the CDR loop is CDR 2.
7. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4, wherein the CDR loop is CDR3 (D segment).

8. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, further comprising a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope, the B cell epitope having replaced another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule and has specificity as an epitope.

9. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the T cell epitope is a helper T cell epitope.

10. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope are located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and are selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.

11. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3.

12. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is

selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3.

13. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a viral epitope and is derivable from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

14. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope are viral epitopes and are derivable from the same virus, the virus being selected from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

15. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

16. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8.

17. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 15 and a suitable carrier.

18. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 16 and a suitable carrier.

19. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 17.

20. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 18.

21. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule is selected from the group consisting of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

22. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises a constant domain of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a variable domain of a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

23. A purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

24. A expression vector into which the recombinant nucleic acid molecule of claim 23 is introduced.

25. A host cell transfected with the vector of claim 24.

26. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 which comprises deleting and replacing a portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing

the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.

27. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin of claim 8 which comprises deleting and replacing a first portion of a nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding the T cell epitope and deleting and replacing a second portion of a nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding the B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the first portion corresponding to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and the second portion corresponding to a nucleic acid sequence encoding another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule encoded by the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope occur in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loops and have specificity as epitopes.

28. A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by a recombinant DNA technology method comprising deleting a CDR loop of a parent immunoglobulin molecule and replacing the deleted CDR loop with a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.

29. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the CDR loop is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment).

30. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the CDR loop is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.

31. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 29, wherein the CDR loop is CDR2.

32. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 29, wherein the CDR loop is CDR3.

33. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the B cell epitope is a viral epitope and is derivable from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

34. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28.

35. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 34 and a suitable carrier.

36. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 35.

37. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule is selected from the group consisting of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

38. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises a constant domain of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a+ variable domain of a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

39. A purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28.

40. A expression vector into which the recombinant nucleic acid molecule of claim 39 is introduced.

41. A host cell transfected with the vector of claim 40.

42. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28 which comprises deleting and replacing a portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing chimeric immunoglobulin molecule encoded by the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.



43. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

44. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4.

45. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5.

46. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8.

47. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10.

48. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11.

49. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12.

50. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

51. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

52. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

53. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

54. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

55. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

56. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

57. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

58. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

59. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

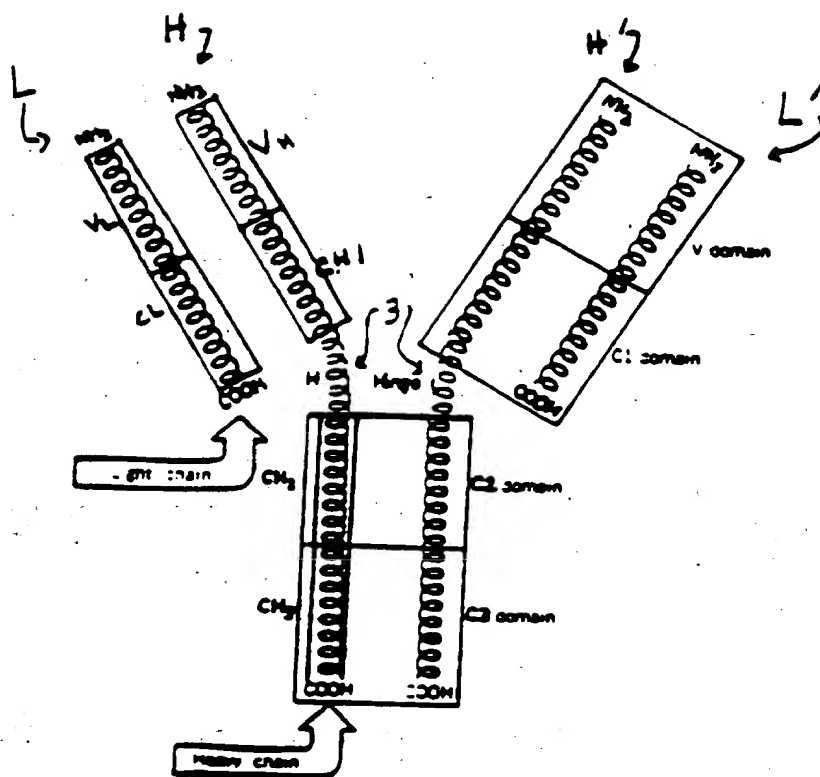
60. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

61. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

62. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

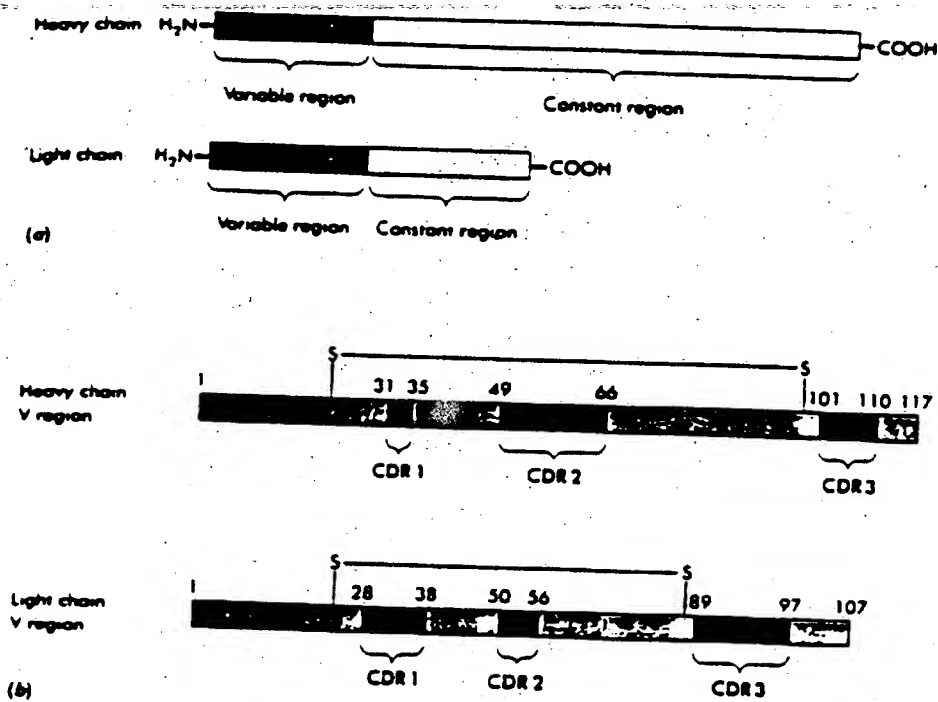
63. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

Figure 1A



2/24

## Figure 1B



3/24

Fig 1C

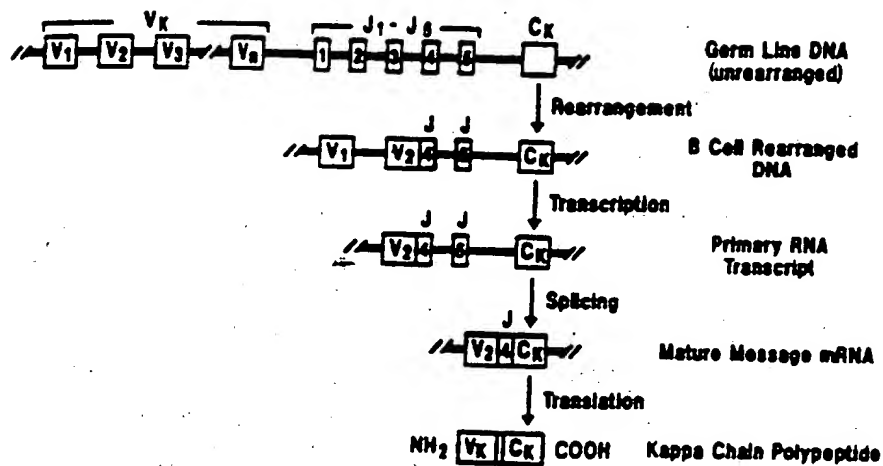
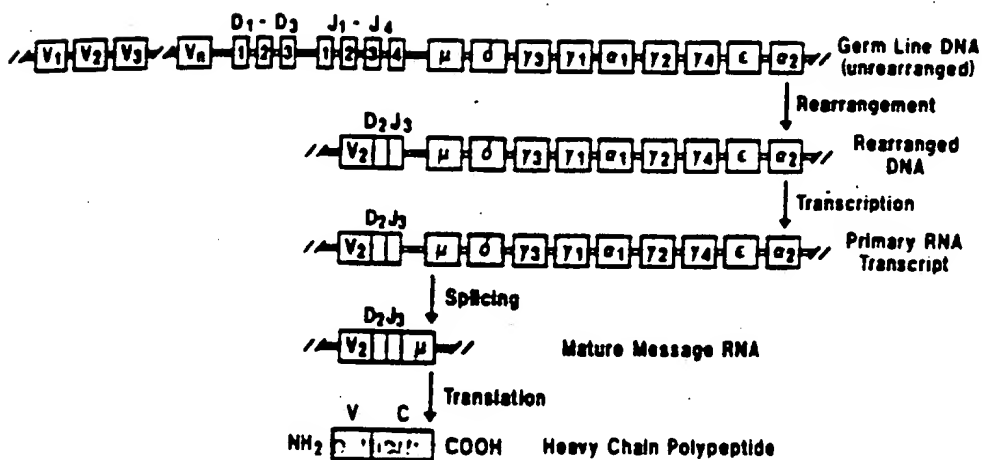
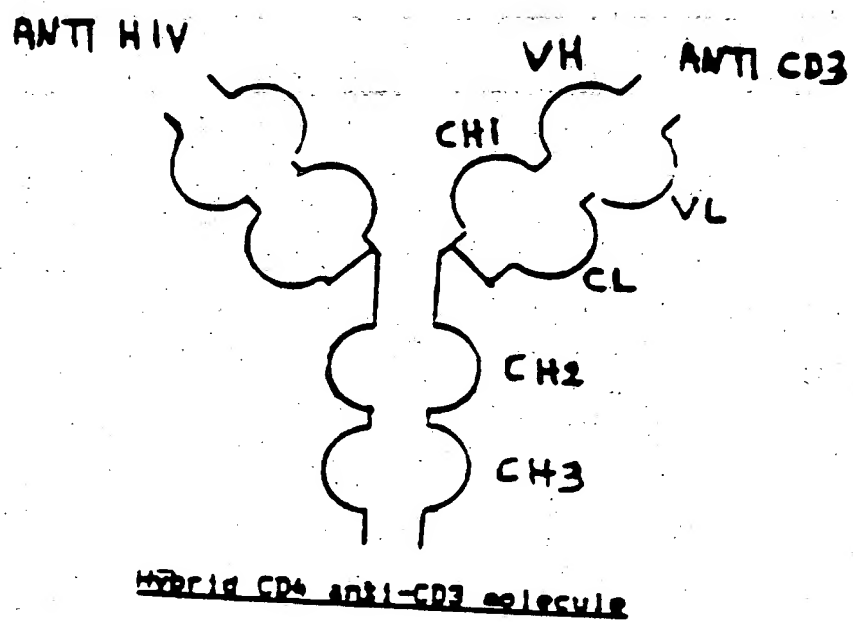


Fig 1D



4/24

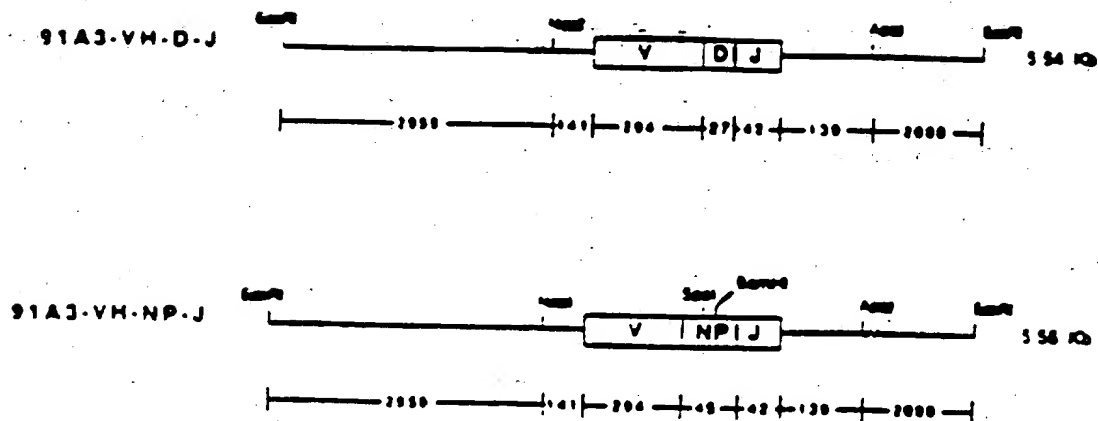
Figure 2





5/24

FIGURE 3





7/24

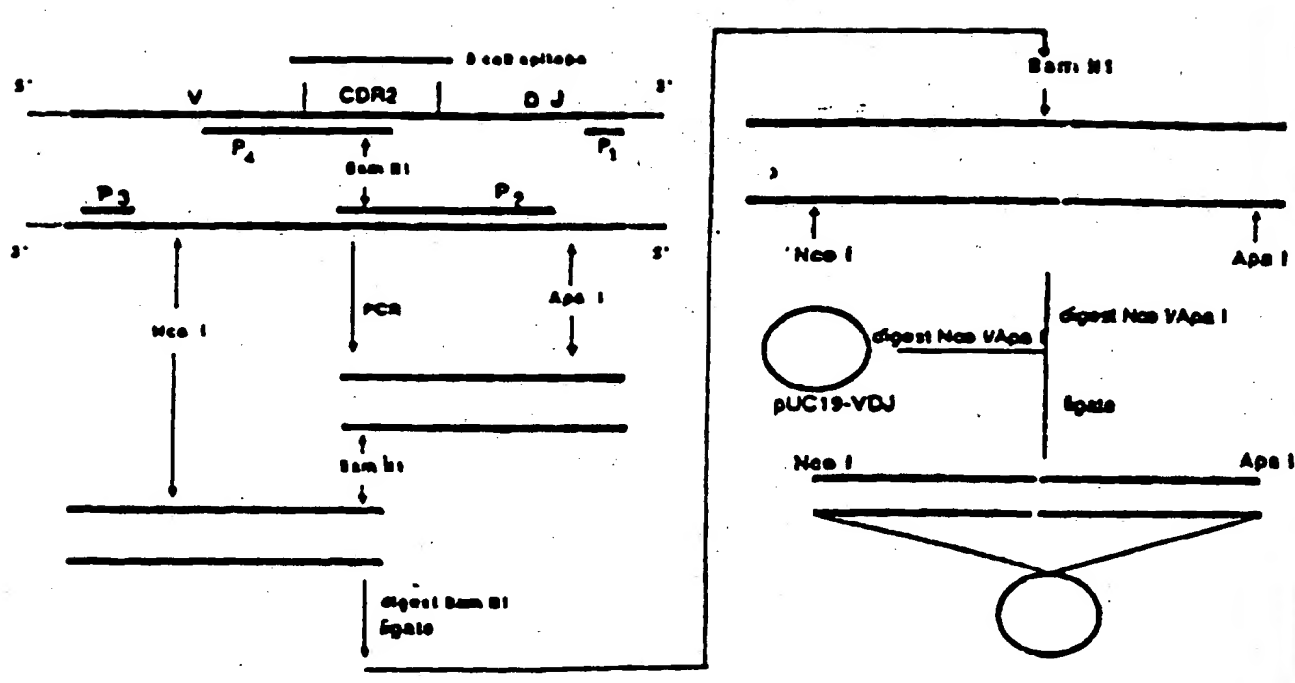


Fig. 5

8/24

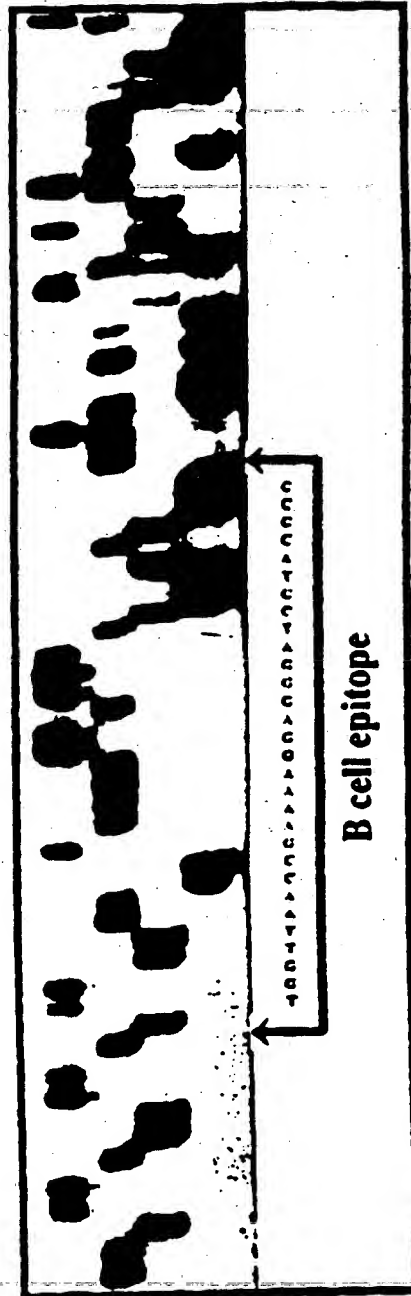


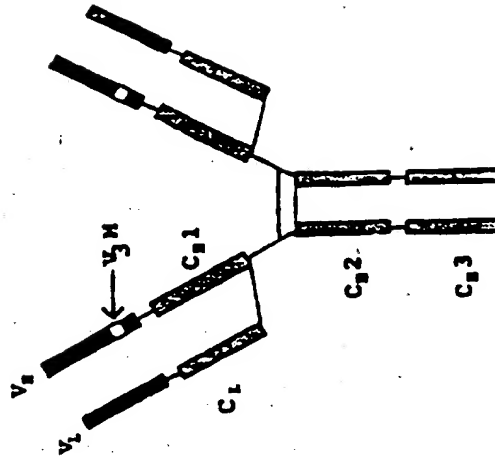
Fig 6

9/24

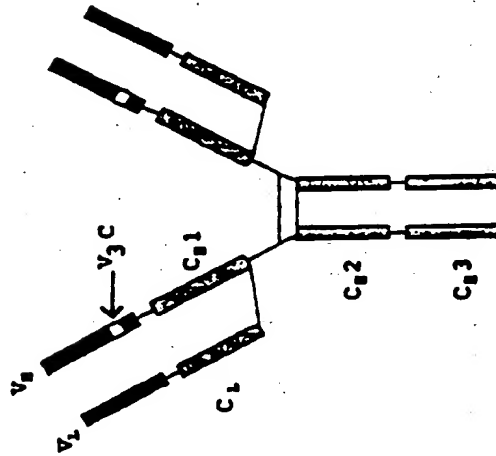
Fig. 7A

~~Fig. 7A~~

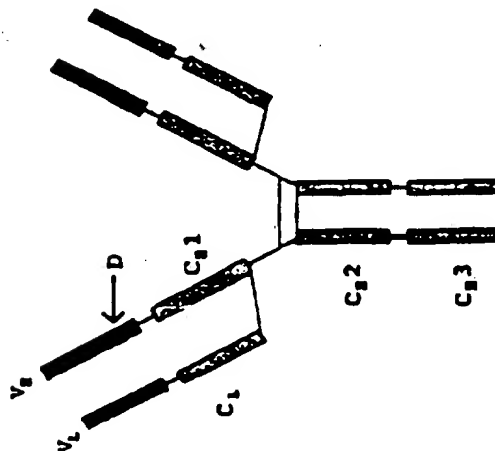
Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M



Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C



Ig-H



10/24

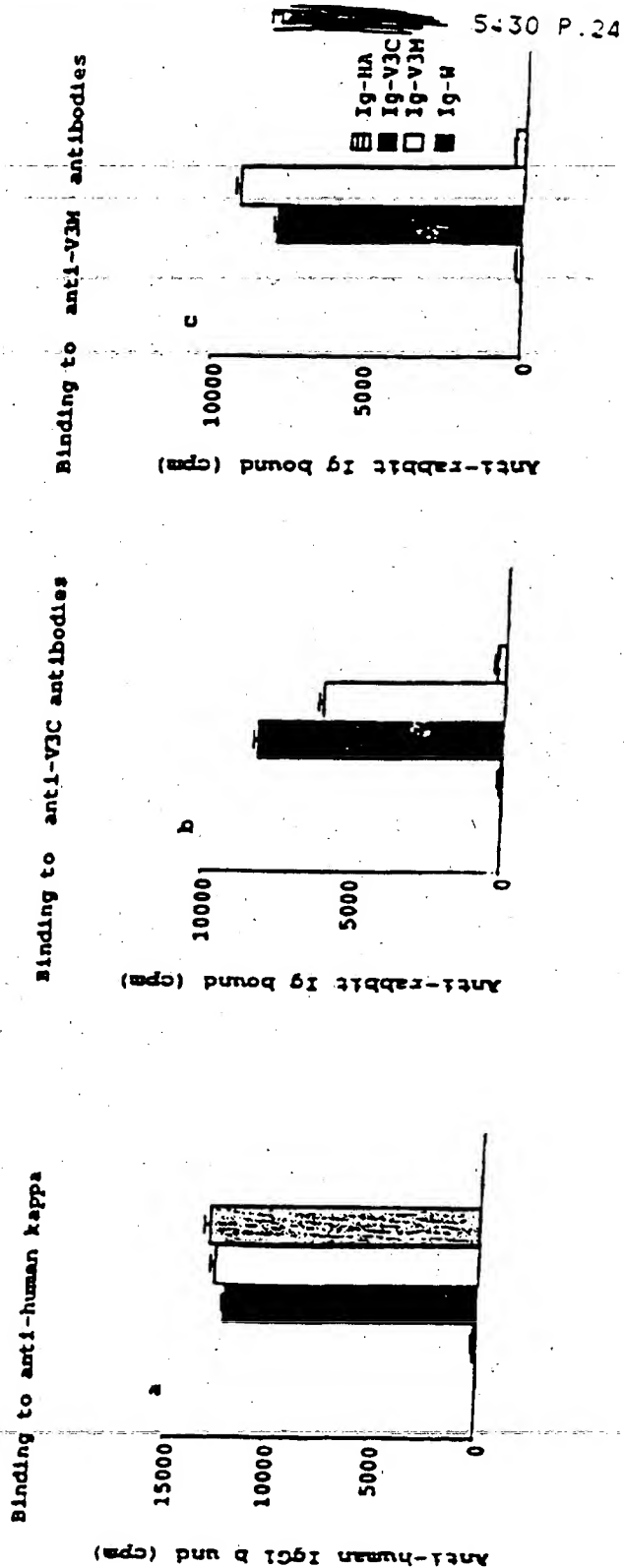
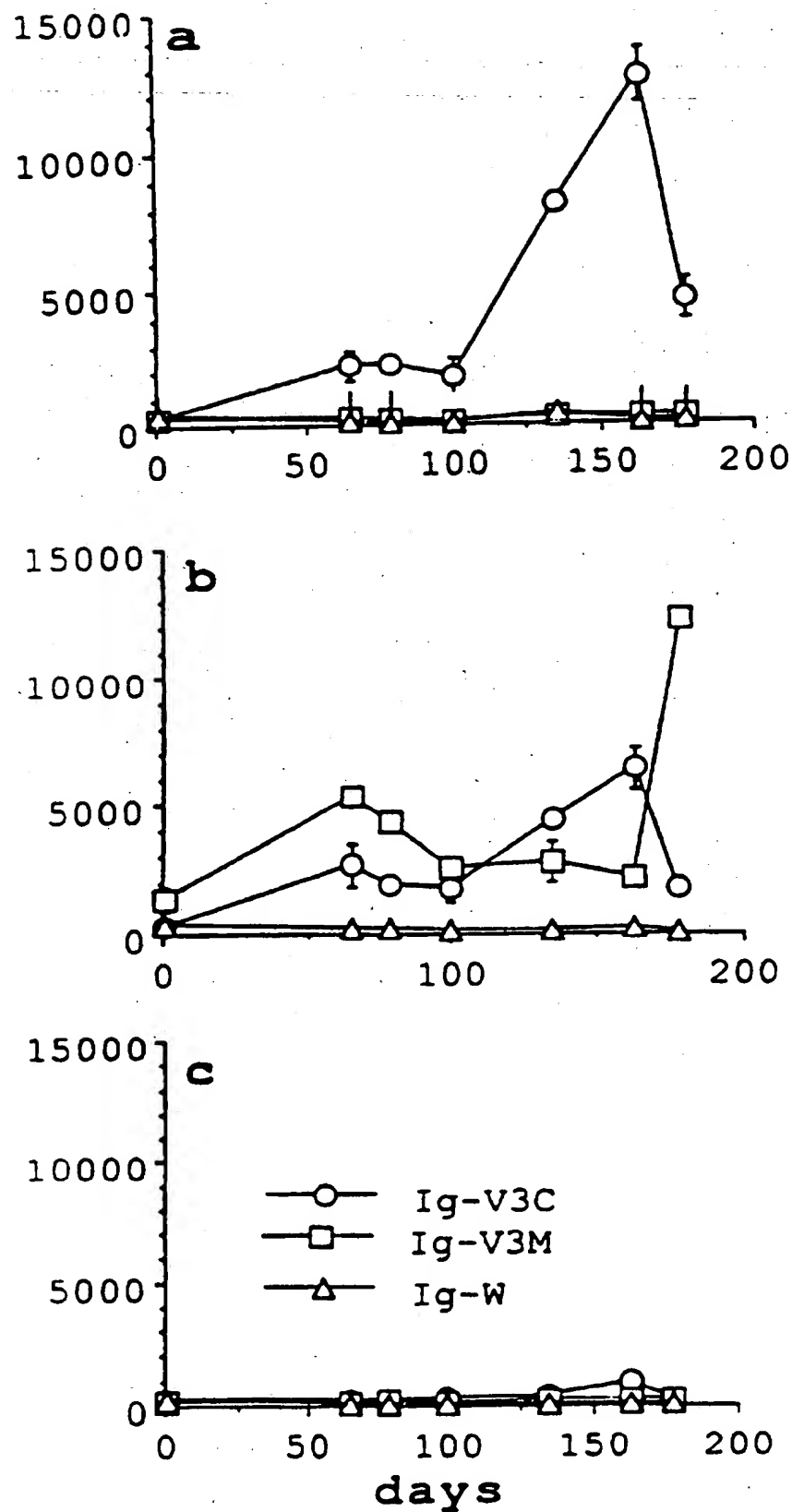


Fig. 7B

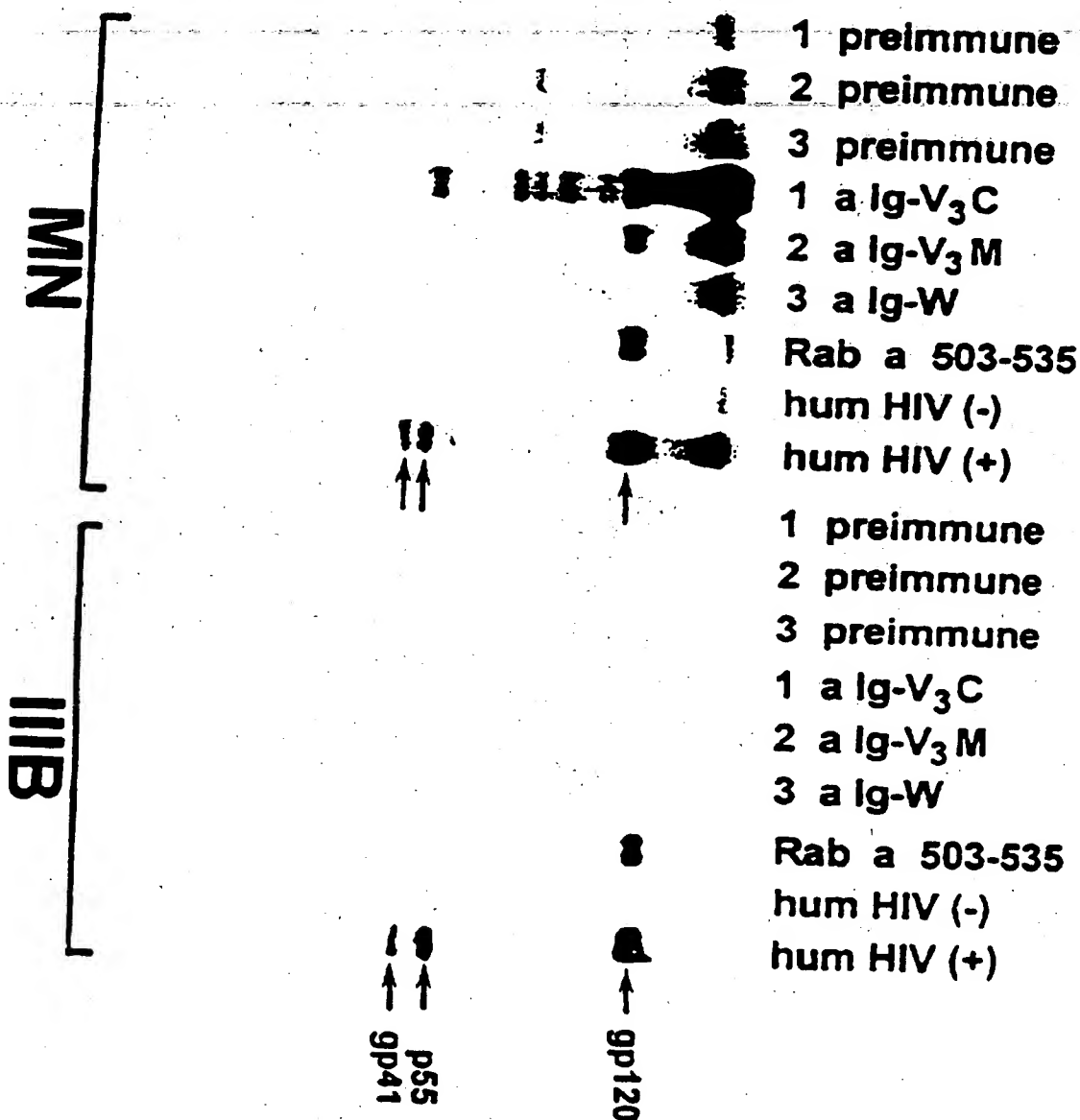
Fig. 8

anti-human IgG antibodies bound (cpm)



12/24

Fig. 9





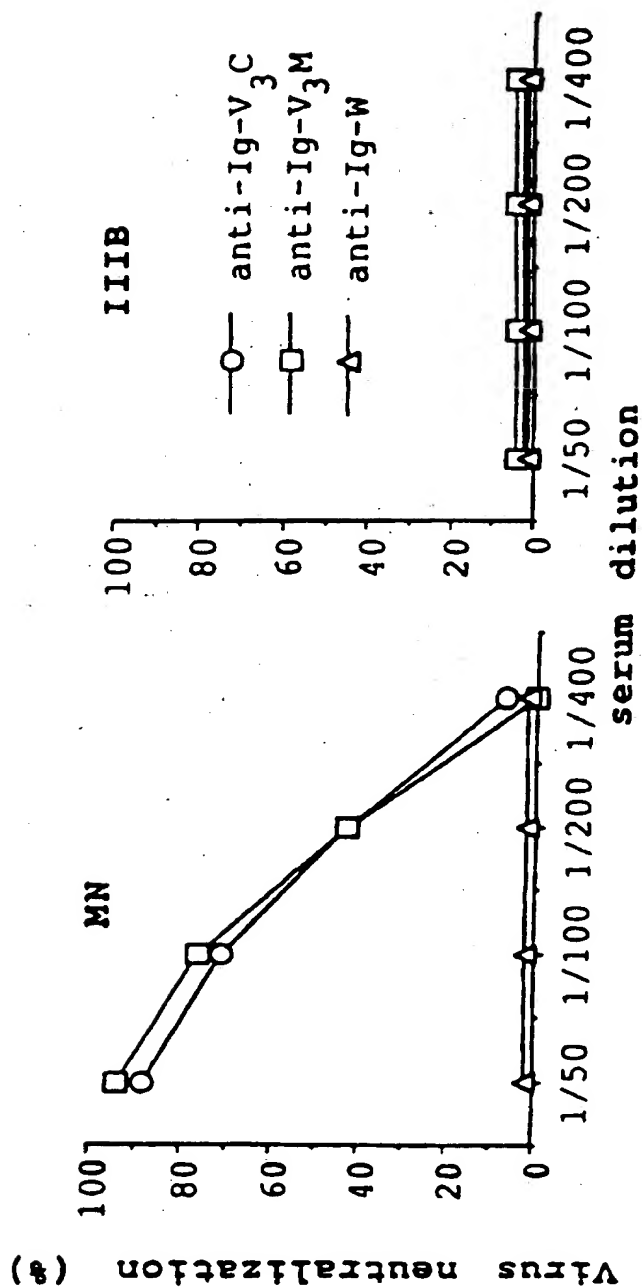
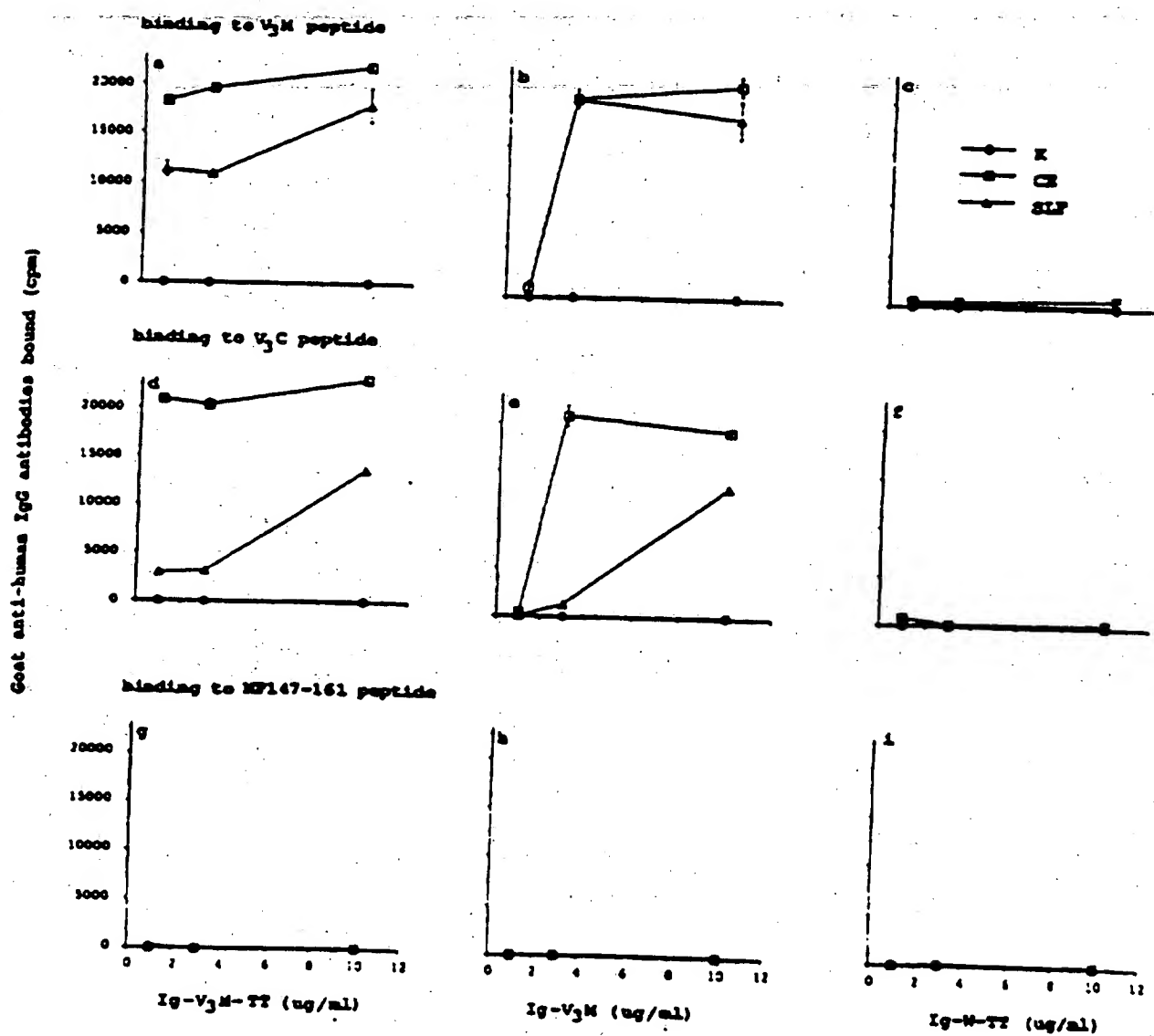


Fig. 10

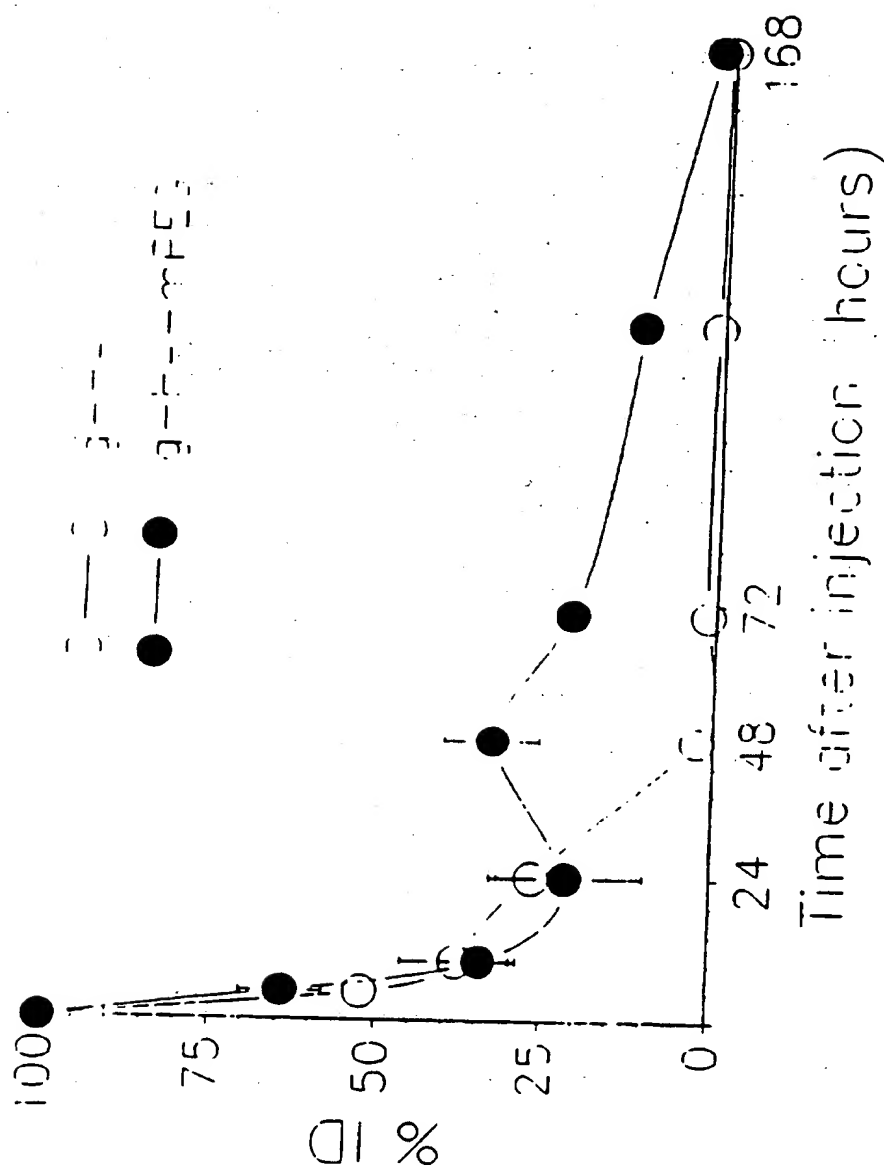
14/24

Fig. 11



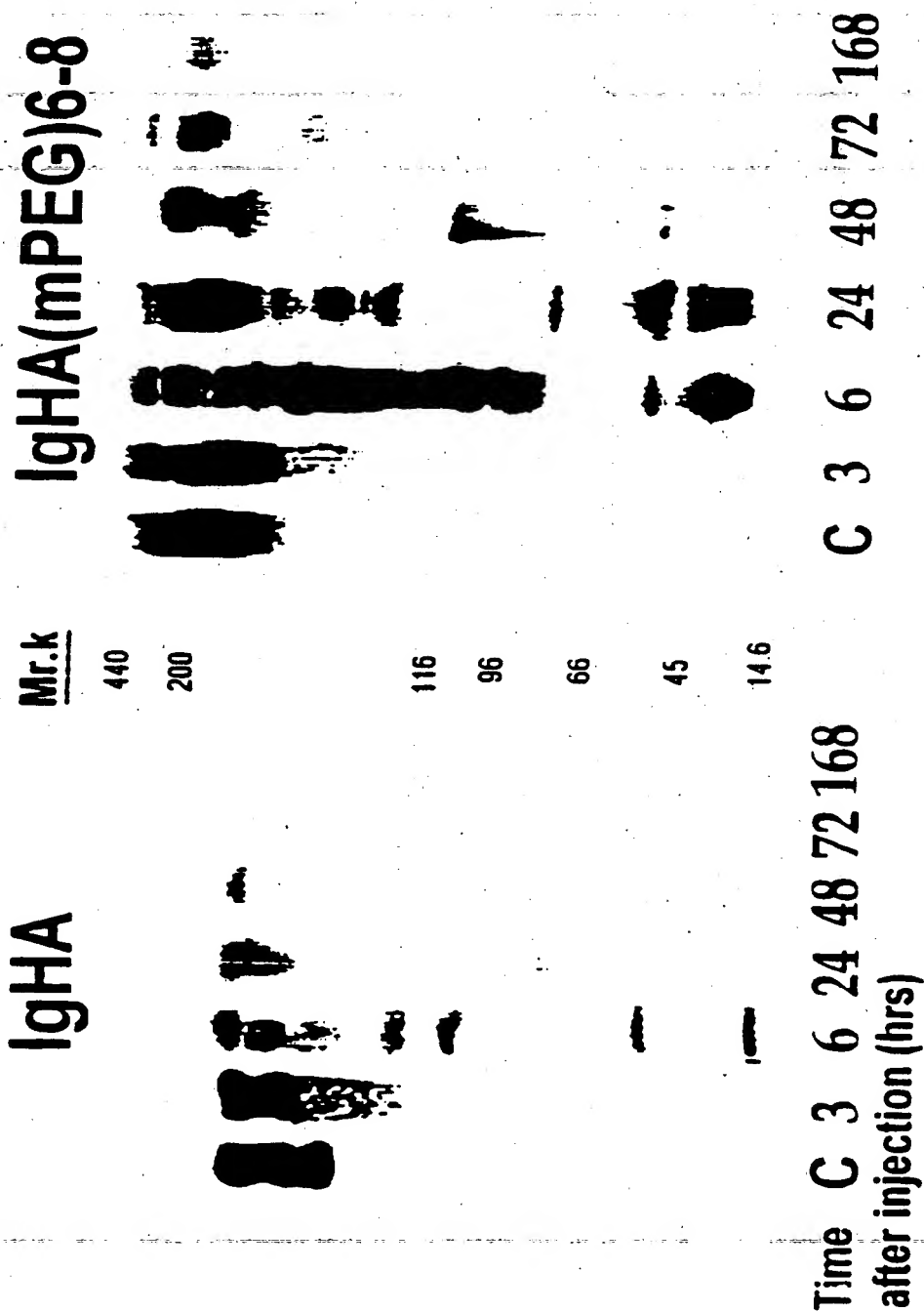
15/24

Fig. 12



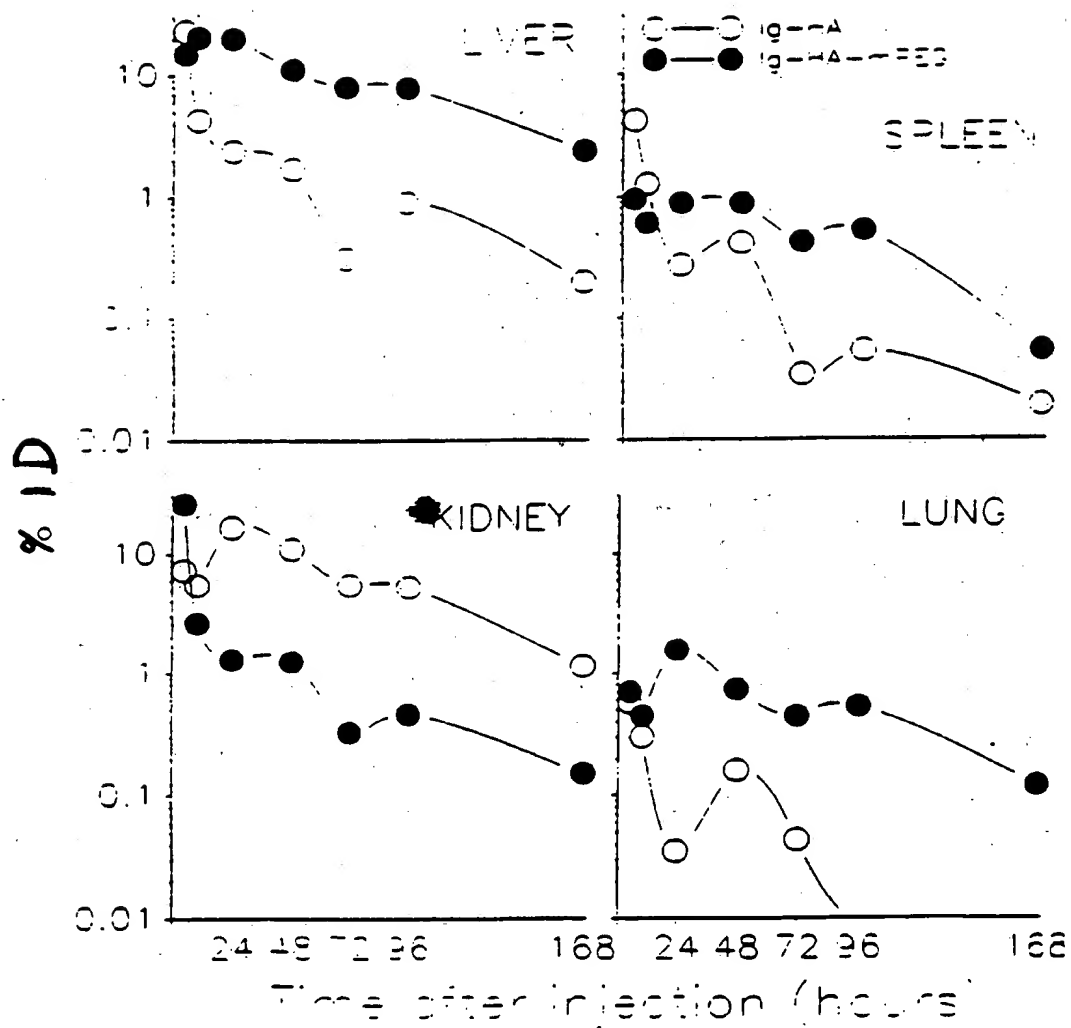
16/24

Fig. 3



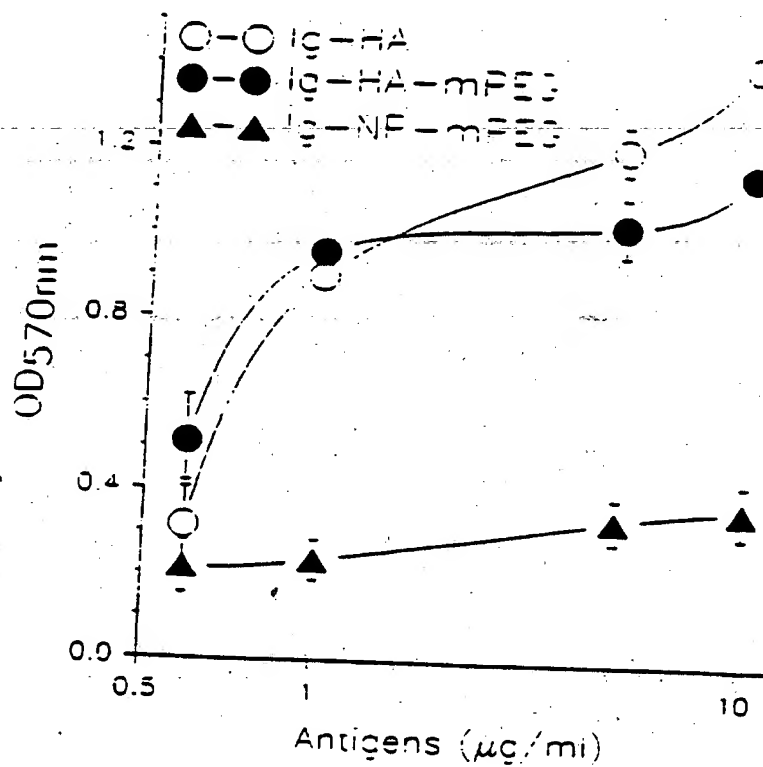
17/24

Fig. 14.



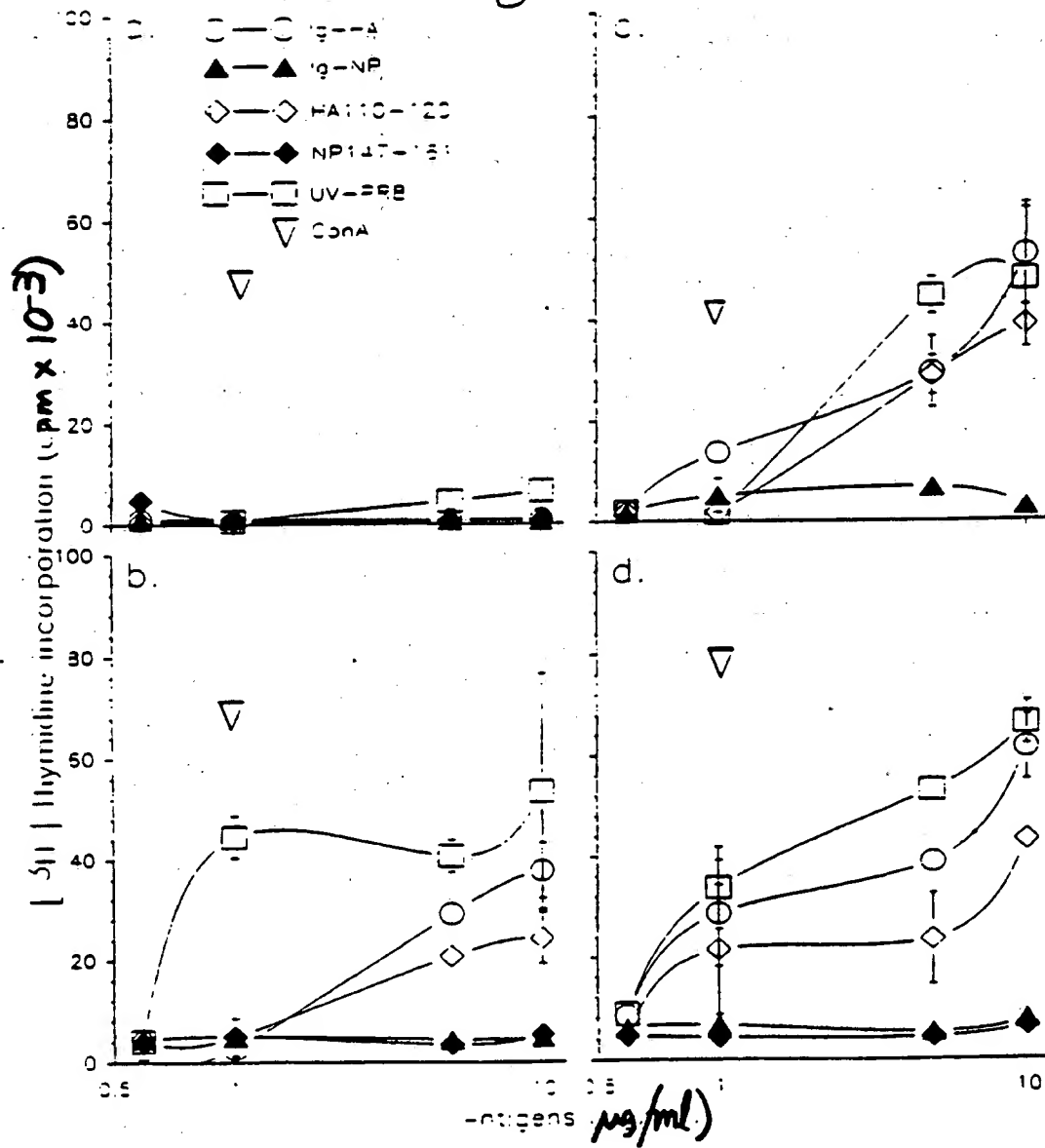
18/24

Fig. 15



19/24

Fig. 16



20/24

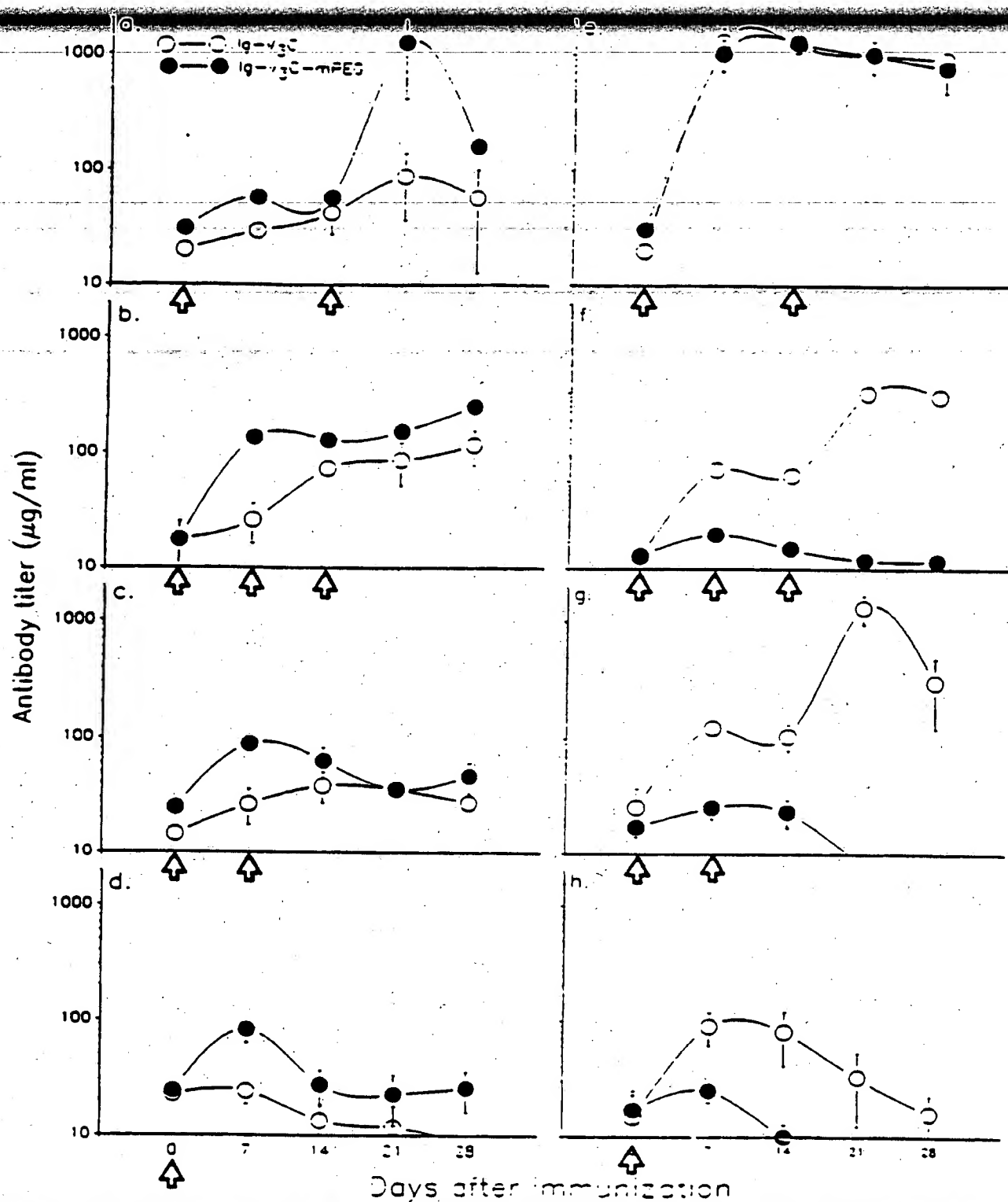


Fig. 17



Fig. 18

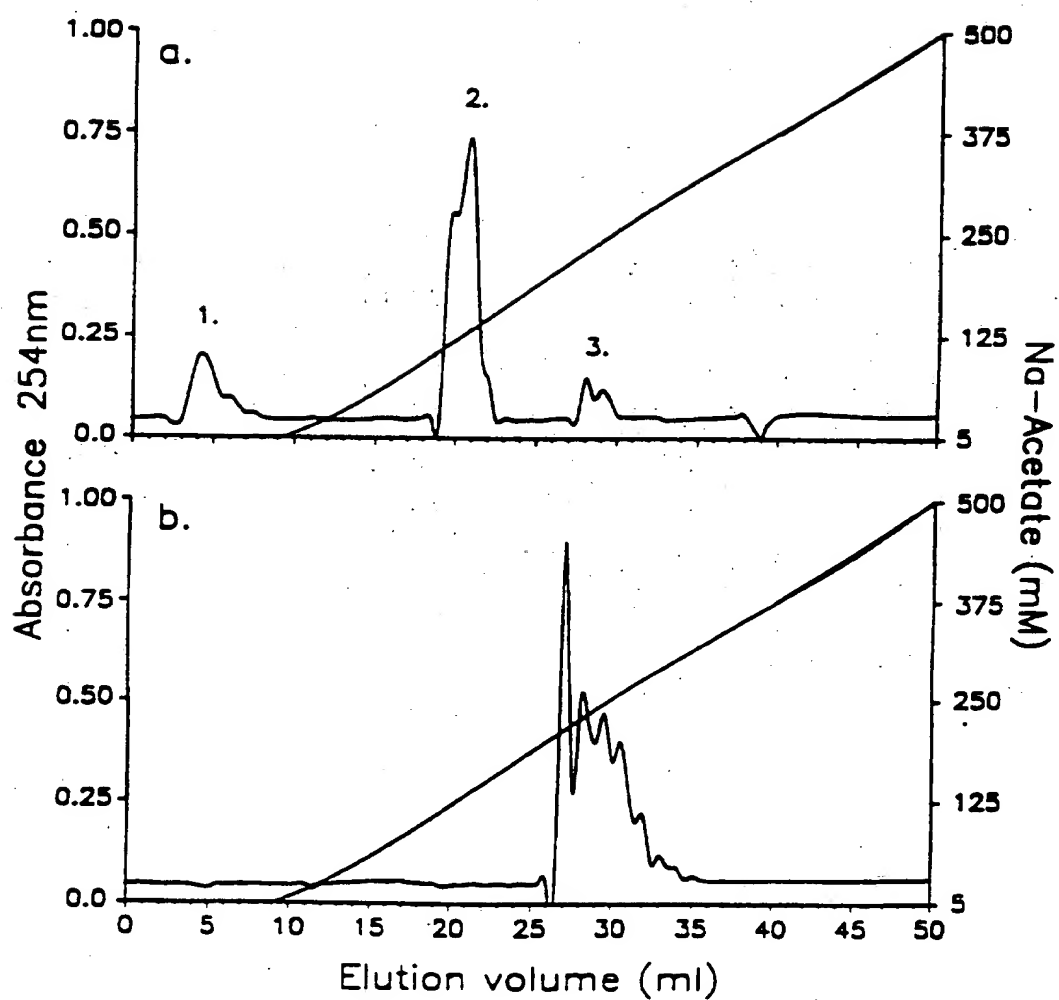


Fig. 19

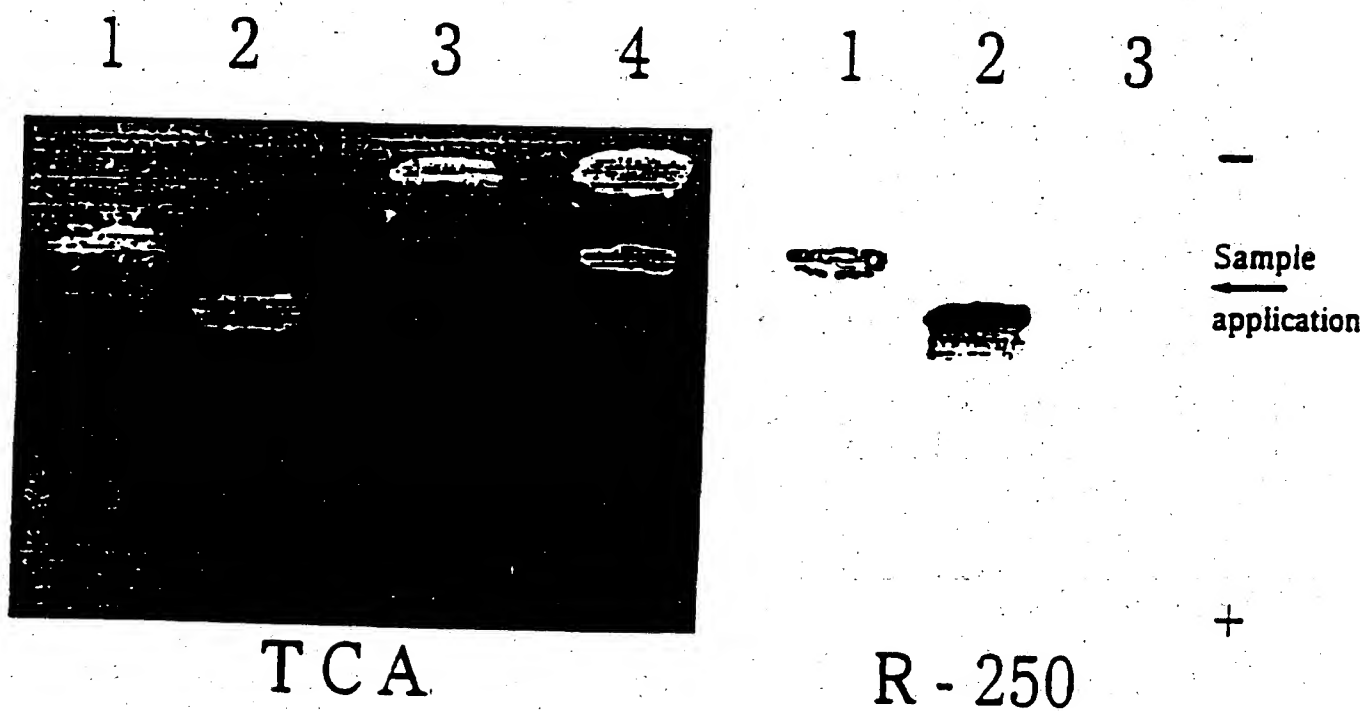


Fig. 20

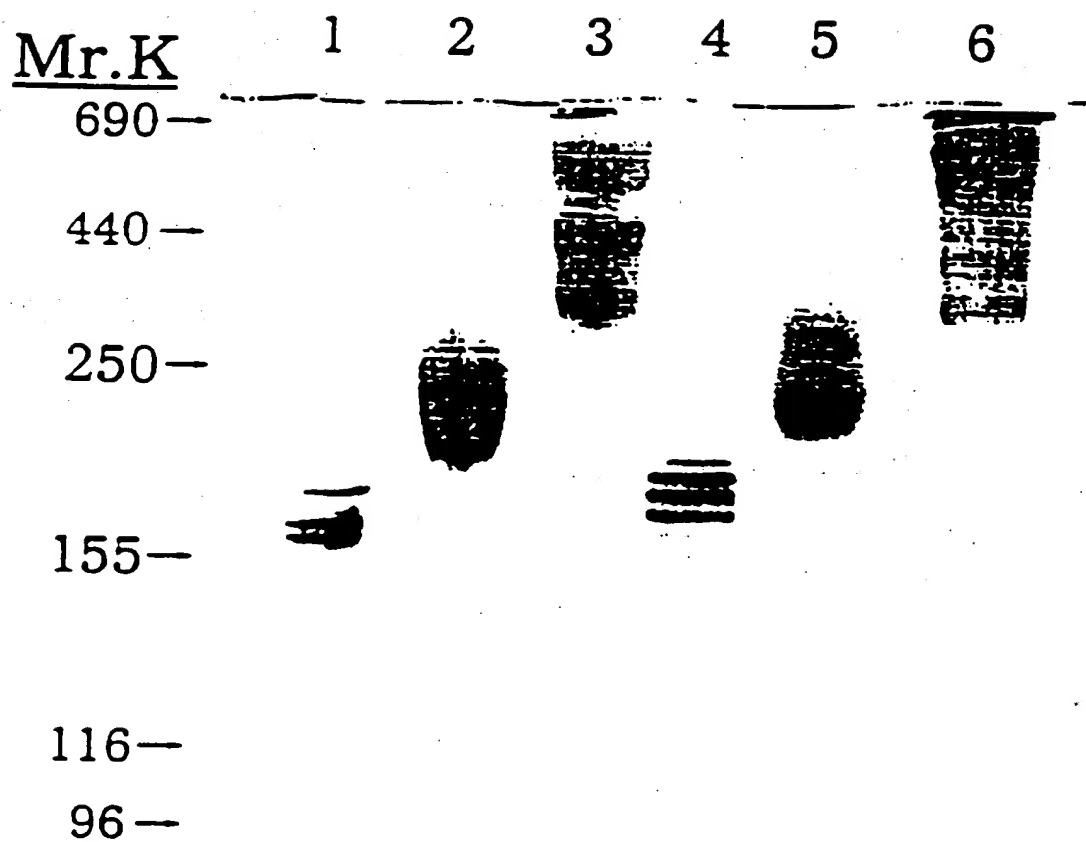
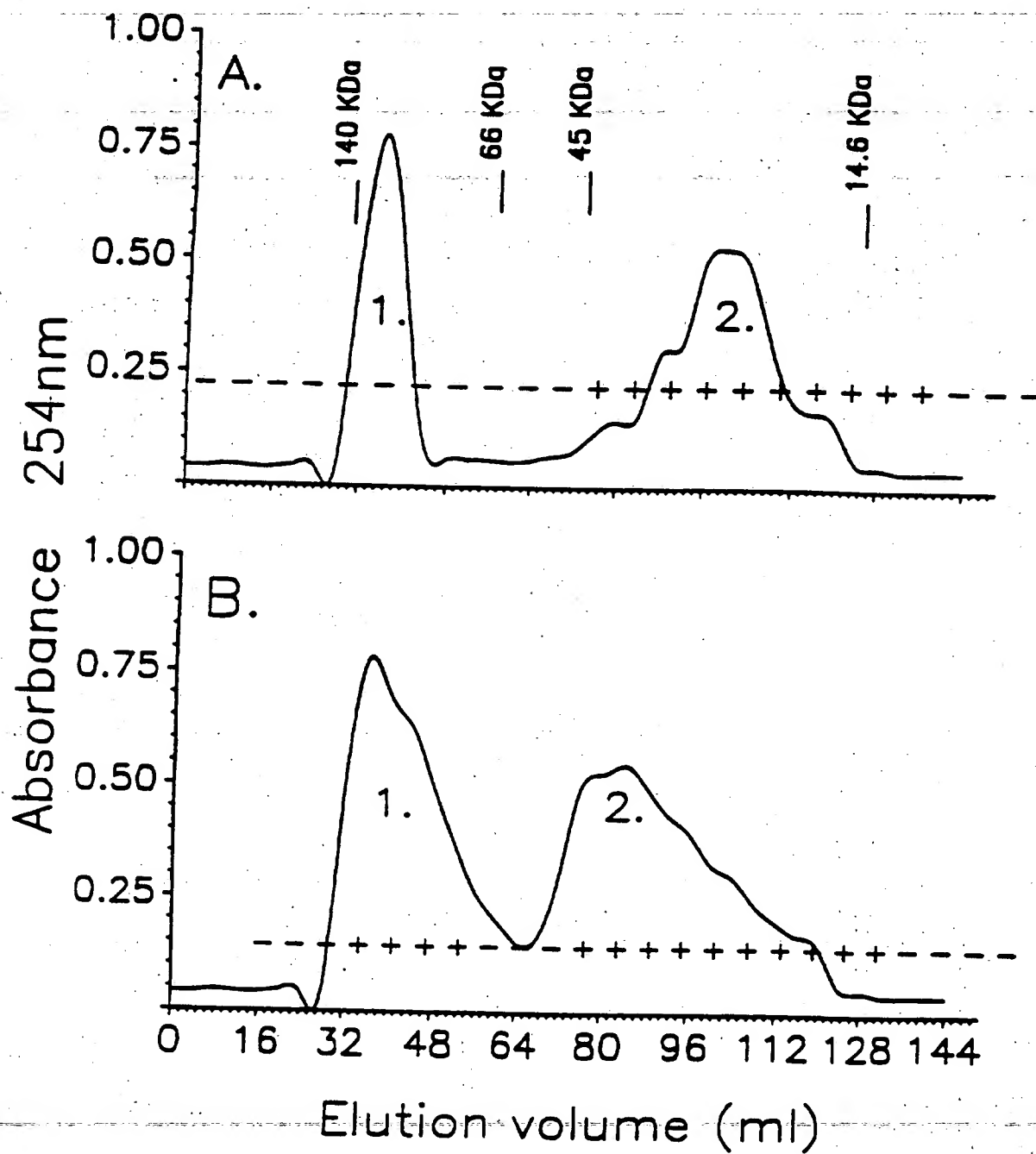


Fig. 21



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US95/16718

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(6) : C12P 21/08, 21/04; A61K 39/395, 39/42; C12N 1/21; A01N 31/08

US CL : 530/387.3; 424/133.1; 435/69.6, 252.33; 514/44

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 530/387.3; 424/133.1; 435/69.6, 252.33; 514/44

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, DIALOG, STN, protein and DNA databases

search terms: immunoglobulin, T cell epitope, B cell epitope, antibody

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category*      | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No.   |
|----------------|---|---|
| X<br>----<br>Y | International Immunology, Volume 5, Number 10, issued 1993, Kuzu et al, "Priming of Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes at various stages of ontogeny with transfectoma cells expressing a chimeric Ig heavy chain gene bearing an influenza virus nucleoprotein peptide", pages 1301-1307, see page 1302, second column. | 1-2, 4-5, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23-26, 43-45, 50-52, 57-59<br>----<br>3, 6-12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 27-42, 46-49, 53-56, 60-63 |

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.
 ☐ See patent family annex.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| * Special categories of cited documents:  | *T* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  |
| *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  | *X* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone   |
| *E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date  | *Y* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art |
| *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) | *G* document member of the same patent family  |
| *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  |  |
| *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed  |  |

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 MARCH 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

11 APR 1996

 Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
 Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
 Box PCT  
 Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

JULIE REEVES

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US95/16718

## C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No.                       |
|-----------|---|---|
| X<br>---  | International Review of Immunology, Volume 10, issued 1993, Zaghouani et al, "Engineered Immunoglobulin Molecules as Vehicles for T cell Epitopes", pages 265-278, see Figure 1 and pages 276-277.  | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21, 23-26<br>--- |
| Y         |   | 6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 22, 27-63       |
| X<br>---  | Science, Volume 259, issued 08 January 1993, Zaghouani et al, "Presentation of a viral T cell epitope expressed in the CDR3 region of a self immunoglobulin molecule", pages 224-227, see pages 224-226.  | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21-26<br>---     |
| Y         |   | 6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 27-63           |
| X<br>---  | Journal of Immunology, Volume 148, Number 11, issued 01 June 1992, Zaghouani et al, "Cells expressing an H chain Ig gene carrying a viral T cell epitope are lysed by specific cytolytic T cells", pages 3604-3609, see pages 3604 and 3607-3609. | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21-26<br>---     |
| Y         |   | 6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 27-63           |
| Y         | Cancer Research, Volume 51, issued 15 August 1991, Kitamura et al, "Chemical Engineering of the Monoclonal Antibody A7 by Polyethylene Glycol for Targeting Cancer Chemotherapy", pages 4310-4315, see pages 4313-4315.                           | 57-63                                       |
| Y         | Immunology Letters, Volume 15, issued 1987, Wilkinson et al, "Tolerogenic polyethylene glycol derivatives of xenogeneic monoclonal immunoglobulins", pages 17-22, see page 21.  | 57-63                                       |

**BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING**

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.

Group I, claims 1-42, drawn to a chimeric immunoglobulin (Ig) vaccine, method of making and method of use by administering the chimeric Ig as a vaccine.

Group II, claims 43-56, drawn to a method of ex vivo gene therapy to express chimeric Ig cDNA in a patient.

Group III, claims 57-63, drawn to a product of the poly ethylene glycol derivatized Ig chimeric molecule.

The inventions listed as Groups I, II and III do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: Group II has the special technical feature of the expression of the Ig cDNA by ex vivo gene therapy that is not a feature of Group I or Group III. Group III has the special technical feature of the poly ethylene glycol derivation of the chimeric Ig that results in the special property of augmenting the immune response so that it need not be administered with an adjuvant and this special property is not found in Groups I and II. Accordingly, the claims are not so linked by a special technical feature within the meaning of PCT Rule 13.2 so as to form a single inventive concept.





**CORRECTED  
VERSION**

**PCT**

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|   |  |  |   |
|---|--|--|---|
| <b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b><br><b>C12P 21/08, 21/04, A61K 39/395, 39/42, C12N 1/21, A01N 31/08</b>   |  | <b>A1</b>  | <b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 96/19584</b>    |
|   |  |  | <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 27 June 1996 (27.06.96) |
| <b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US95/16718  |  | <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AU, CA, JP, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE). |   |
| <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 21 December 1995 (21.12.95)  |  | <b>Published</b><br><i>With international search report.</i>   |   |
| <b>(30) Priority Data:</b><br>08/363,276                      22 December 1994 (22.12.94)      US   |  |  |   |
| <b>(71) Applicant:</b> MOUNT SINAI SCHOOL OF MEDICINE OF THE CITY UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK [US/US]; One Gustave L. Levy Place, New York, NY 10029-6574 (US).  |  |  |   |
| <b>(72) Inventors:</b> BONA, Constantin; 333 E. 55th Street, New York, NY 10022 (US). ZAGHOUANI, Habib; Apartment 31, 301 Cheshire Drive, Knoxville, TN 37919 (US).   |  |  |   |
| <b>(74) Agents:</b> CLARK, Richard, S. et al.; Brumbaugh, Graves, Donohue & Raymond, 30 Rockefeller Plaza, New York, NY 10112 (US).   |  |  |   |
| <b>(54) Title:</b> CHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING ANTIGEN BINDING SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES   |  |  |   |
| <b>(57) Abstract</b><br><br>The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site. The chimeric antibodies may be produced by replacing at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule with the desired epitope or antigen binding site such that the functional capabilities of the epitope and the parent immunoglobulin are retained. The chimeric antibodies of the invention may be used to enhance an immune response against pathogens and tumor cells in subjects in need of such treatment. |  |  |   |

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

|    |                          |    |  |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|----|--|----|--------------------------|
| AT | Austria                  | GB | United Kingdom                           | MR | Mauritania               |
| AU | Australia                | GE | Georgia                                  | MW | Malawi                   |
| BB | Barbados                 | GN | Guinea                                   | NE | Niger                    |
| BE | Belgium                  | GR | Greece                                   | NL | Netherlands              |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | HU | Hungary                                  | NO | Norway                   |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | IE | Ireland                                  | NZ | New Zealand              |
| BJ | Benin                    | IT | Italy                                    | PL | Poland                   |
| BR | Brazil                   | JP | Japan                                    | PT | Portugal                 |
| BY | Belarus                  | KE | Kenya                                    | RO | Romania                  |
| CA | Canada                   | KG | Kyrgyzstan                               | RU | Russian Federation       |
| CF | Central African Republic | KP | Democratic People's Republic<br>of Korea | SD | Sudan                    |
| CG | Congo                    | KR | Republic of Korea                        | SE | Sweden                   |
| CH | Switzerland              | KZ | Kazakhstan                               | SI | Slovenia                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | LI | Liechtenstein                            | SK | Slovakia                 |
| CM | Cameroon                 | LK | Sri Lanka                                | SN | Senegal                  |
| CN | China                    | LU | Luxembourg                               | TD | Chad                     |
| CS | Czechoslovakia           | LV | Latvia                                   | TG | Togo                     |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | MC | Monaco                                   | TJ | Tajikistan               |
| DE | Germany                  | MD | Republic of Moldova                      | TT | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| DK | Denmark                  | MG | Madagascar                               | UA | Ukraine                  |
| ES | Spain                    | ML | Mali                                     | US | United States of America |
| FI | Finland                  | MN | Mongolia                                 | UZ | Uzbekistan               |
| FR | France                   |    |  | VN | Viet Nam                 |
| GA | Gabon                    |    |  |    |                          |

-1-

DescriptionCHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING ANTIGEN BINDING  
SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES1. Introduction

The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site. The chimeric antibodies may be produced by replacing at least a portion of an immunoglobulin molecule with the desired epitope or antigen binding site such that the functional capabilities of the epitope and the parent immunoglobulin are retained. The chimeric antibodies of the invention may be used to enhance an immune response against pathogens or tumor cells in subjects in need of such treatment.

5

2. Background Of The Invention2.1. The Immune response

Mammals, including man, possess the ability to mount an immune response as a defense against pathogens from the environment as well as against aberrant cells, such as tumor cells, which develop internally. The immune response is the result of complex interactions between a variety of cells and factors, but has two main components: a cellular component, in which cells directly attack an offending agent (bearing an antigen) and a humoral component, in which antibody molecules bind specifically to the antigen and aid in its elimination.

The primary cells involved in producing the immune response are lymphocytes, of which there are two principal classes, B cells and T cells. Antibodies are produced by B cells. A mature B cell which specializes

in the production of antibody molecules is known as a plasma cell.

Mature T cells have been classified into four subpopulations based on the different tasks they perform. These subpopulations include (1) helper T cells ( $T_h$ ), which are required for promoting or enhancing B cell antibody production; (2) cytotoxic (or cytolytic) T lymphocytes (CTL), which directly kill their target cells by cell lysis; (3) suppressor T cells ( $T_s$ ), which suppress or down-regulate immunological reactions; and (4) T lymphocytes which participate in delayed type hypersensitivity reactions ( $T_{h1}$ ).

These different subpopulations of T cells express a variety of cell surface proteins, some of which are termed "marker proteins" because they are characteristic of particular subpopulations. For example, most  $T_h$  cells express the cell surface CD4 protein, whereas most CTL and  $T_s$  cells express the cell surface CD8 protein. Additionally, mature T cells can be distinguished from immature T cells (thymocytes) by the presence of the cell surface T cell receptor (TCR), a transmembrane protein complex which is capable of recognizing antigen in association with self-antigens encoded by major histocompatibility complex ("MHC") genes.

Initiation and maintenance of immune responses involve cell to cell interactions and depend on the recognition of and interactions between particular proteins or protein complexes on the surface of B cells, T cells, and foreign substances called "antigens".

Both cell-mediated and antibody-mediated components of the immune response begin when a T or B cell recognizes a foreign antigen by binding to a specific site on the antigen; that specific site is known as an "epitope".

-3-

The cell-mediated response involves the lytic activity of CTL activated by exposure to antigen and proceeds in the absence of B cells. A CTL programmed to recognize a particular antigenic epitope (a "CTL epitope") will lyse a cell bearing that epitope on its surface.

For the antibody-mediated response to occur, a  $T_h$  cell which has been activated by exposure to a foreign antigen (a " $T_h$  epitope") interacts with a B cell, which has been activated by exposure to a particular B cell epitope on the same foreign antigen, to stimulate the B cell to produce humoral proteins known as immunoglobulins or antibodies. The antibodies produced by the B cell recognize antigen bearing, on its surface, the B cell epitope.

Thus, the immune response toward an offending pathogen or tumor cell consists of concerted action between  $T_h$ , CTL and B cells which is largely triggered by antigen-mediated signals. This allows the immune response to be selectively directed toward the pathogen or tumor cells, and avoids the destruction of non-infected, non-malignant cells.

## 2.2. Immunoglobulin Genes

Exemplary of the basic components of antibody structure is human immunoglobulin G (IgG). As shown schematically in Figure 1A, IgG is a tetrameric protein complex formed from two identical heavy (H) chains and two identical immunoglobulin light (L) chains. These chains are joined together by disulfide bonds into a Y-shaped antibody complex. In solution however, the molecule takes on a more globular shape.

Amino acid sequence analysis of immunoglobulins has led to the definition of specific regions with various functional activities within the heavy chains. Each light chain and each heavy chain has a

variable region ( $V_L$  and  $V_H$ , respectively) comprised within the first 100 amino acids located at its amino terminus. Three dimensional pairing of the  $V_L$  and  $V_H$  regions constitute the antigen-recognition portion or "antigen combining site" ("ACS") of the IgG molecule. Because of the tetrameric nature of immunoglobulins, there are two identical antigen combining sites per molecule. The variable domains of these chains are highly heterogeneous in sequence and provide the diversity for antigen combining sites to be highly specific for a large variety of antigenic structures. The heterogeneity of the variable domains is not evenly distributed throughout the variable regions, but is located in three segments, called complementarity determining regions ("CDRs"), as shown in Figure 1B (Watson et al., 1987, Molecular Biology of the Gene, Fourth Edition, Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., Inc., Menlo Park, CA, p. 845).

Each of the heavy chains also includes three or four constant regions (designated  $C_{H1}$ ,  $C_{H2}$ ,  $C_{H3}$  and, when appropriate,  $C_{H4}$ ), depending on antibody class, which do not vary significantly among antibodies of a single class. The constant regions do not participate in antigen binding, but are associated with a number of biological activities known as "effector functions", such as binding to Fc receptors on cell surfaces and to complement proteins. In addition, the heavy chains have a hinge region separating  $C_{H1}$  and  $C_{H2}$  from the remainder of the molecule. The hinge imparts flexibility to the tetramer.

The light chains have a single constant region ( $C_L$ ). The pairing of  $C_L$  and  $C_{H1}$  produce the first constant domain,  $C_1$ , while the pairing of the  $C_{H2}$  regions produces the second constant domain,  $C_2$  and the pairing of the  $C_{H3}$  regions produces the third constant domain,  $C_3$ .

A light chain pairs with a heavy chain through a disulfide bond which attaches  $C_{H1}$  to  $C_L$ . The two heavy chains of the molecule pair together through disulfide bonds at the junction between the hinge region and  $C_{H2}$ .

Mammals are able to produce antibodies to a seemingly infinite variety of antigens. In order to provide such an extensive repertoire, immunoglobulin genes have evolved so as permit the production of vast numbers of different immunoglobulin proteins from a finite number of genes. This diversity is due, in part, to genetic rearrangement of immunoglobulin genes. A single gene, in an undifferentiated cell, contains a number of different regions.

Figure 1C depicts the genetic events leading to the synthesis of kappa light chain. In the kappa light chain gene, there are three regions, a  $V_K$  region, a  $J_K$  region, and a  $C_K$  region. Both the  $V_K$  and  $J_K$  regions contain a number of domains. Figure 1D depicts the genetic events leading to the synthesis of an immunoglobulin heavy chain, and illustrates that heavy chain genes contain an even greater number of regions, including  $V_H$ ,  $D_H$ ,  $J_H$ , and constant regions, each of which contains multiple elements. Before a B cell can produce antibody molecules, its heavy and light chain immunoglobulin genes must rearrange to combine one element from each region. Providing yet more diversity, there are several immunoglobulin classes with varying features. For a review of immunoglobulin genetics and protein structure see Lewin, "Genes III", John Wiley and Sons, N.Y. (1987) and Benjamini and Leskowitz, 1988, Immunology, Alan R. Liss, Inc., New York, pp.75-84 (for Figures 1C and 1D).

### 2.3. Therapeutic Manipulations Of The Immune Response

Genetic engineering techniques have been applied to components of the immune system in hopes of

enhancing the natural immune response and to provide reagents for performing diagnostic tests.

Antibodies are extremely important in diagnostic and therapeutic applications due to their  
5 diversity and specificity. Molecular biology techniques have been used to increase the availability of antibodies for scientific applications.

For instance, a single antibody producing B cell can be immortalized by fusion with a tumor cell  
10 and expanded to provide an in vitro source of antibodies of a single specificity known as a "monoclonal antibody" (mAb). Such an immortal B cell line is termed a "hybridoma".

Until recently, the source of most mAb has  
15 been murine (mouse) hybridomas. Although they have been used extensively in diagnostic procedures, murine mAb are not well suited for induction of passive immunity or other therapeutic applications in mammals including humans and nonsyngeneic mice. Moreover,  
20 murine antibodies are recognized as foreign by other mammalian species and elicit an immune response which may itself cause illness. Human mAb would therefore be extremely useful in the treatment of a wide variety of human diseases.

25 To overcome the problems of immune responses to foreign mAb and the lack of suitable human mAb, at least in part, genetic engineering techniques have been used to construct so-called "humanized" immunoglobulin molecules which contain the antigen binding com-  
30 plementarity determining regions of the murine antibodies but in which the remainder of the molecule is composed of human antibody sequences which are not recognized as foreign. Jones et al., "R placing the Complementarity-Determining Regions in a Human Antibody



With Those From a Mouse", Nature, 321:522-525 (1986). These hybrid "humanized" antibodies eventually may be used as "immunotherapeutic" reagents in humans.

5 In further applications of genetic engineering technology, protein sequences corresponding to the epitopes of antigens of various organisms have been prepared both synthetically and by recombinant DNA techniques for use in vaccines. Administration of such synthetic epitopes has been problematic, however, in  
10 view of the short half-life of peptides in the mammalian body. In many cases, effective exposure to such peptides has been too brief to permit the induction of a satisfactory immune response.

### 3. Summary Of The Invention

15 The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise a B cell epitope, a T cell epitope, and/or an antigen binding site.

It is based, at least in part, on the discovery that the replacement of at least a portion of an  
20 immunoglobulin molecule with a peptide comprising a B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site may be accomplished without eliminating the functional activities of either the epitope/antigen binding site or the parent immunoglobulin molecule. According to the  
25 invention, antibody molecules comprising an inserted T cell or B cell epitope may effectively induce a T cell or B cell immune response, respectively.

In view of these properties, and because of the longer half-lives exhibited by immunoglobulin  
30 molecules relative to peptides, the chimeric antibodies of the invention may provide, in vaccine development, an attractive alternative to synthetic peptides bearing the same epitopes. Such chimeric antibodies may not only prolong exposure time to the antigen, but may  
35 recruit elements of the immun system so as to augment

and improve the efficiency of the overall immune response.

In various embodiments of the invention, chimeric antibodies may be produced which contain more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, including combinations of these elements.

In one nonlimiting embodiment, a chimeric antibody comprises both a B cell epitope as well as a helper T cell epitope. Such an antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

In further nonlimiting embodiments of the invention, the recombinant antibody molecules are covalently linked to polyethylene glycol ("pegylated"). Such pegylated recombinant antibodies are capable of producing an enhanced immune response in the absence of adjuvants.

In preferred embodiments of the invention, where a chimeric antibody is to be used in a human subject, the constant region of the antibody comprises a majority of human immunoglobulin constant region peptide sequence so as to avoid an interspecies immune response, because the strongest antigenic determinants are located on the Ig constant regions.

#### 4. Description Of The Figures

Figure 1A is an illustration of an immunoglobulin molecule illustrating its Y shape, combining sites, hinge regions, light and heavy chains and their corresponding variable and constant domains.

Figure 1B depicts the location of variable and hypervariable (CDR) regions in light and heavy immunoglobulin chains. The numbers indicate typical amino acid positions, and S---S indicates a disulfid bridg .

Figure 1C is an illustration of immunoglobulin kappa light chain gene structure.

Figure 1D is an illustration of immunoglobulin heavy chain gene structure.

5           Figure 2 is an illustration of a protein complex containing a single immunoglobulin combining site capable of recognizing a virus, virus infected cell or viral antigen, a single immunoglobulin combining site capable of recognizing and binding to CDR3  
10 so as to activate CTL, and an immunoglobulin hinge region separating the combining sites from the immunoglobulin constant domain CH2 and CH3 regions.

Figure 3 is a schematic diagram of a DNA construct containing the VH-D-J gene.

15           Figure 4 is a flow diagram showing a cloning scheme of the VH-D-J region.

Figure 5 illustrates the insertion of B cell epitope HA sequence in place of CDR2 segment.

20           Figure 6 presents nucleotide sequencing analysis of two clones, termed C3 and C8, which show the deletion of CDR2 sequence of 91A3 V<sub>H</sub> and insertion in the correct frame of sequence encoding the B cell epitope (SEQ ID NO: 16).

25           Figure 7. Schematic representation and immunochemical properties of Ig-HIV-1 peptide chimeras. (A): The H and L chain variable regions (filled boxes) of the murine anti-arsonate 91A3 antibody (Rathburn et al., 1988, J. Mol. Biol. 202:383-395; Sanz et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. 84:1085-1089) were  
30 used along with the H and L chain constant regions (hatched boxes) of human Kappa and  $\gamma$ 1 chains (Dangl et al., 1988, EMBO.J. 7:1994-1988; Oi et al., 1986, Bio Techniques 4:214-221) to generate Ig chimeras carrying HIV-1 V<sub>3</sub> determinants (open squares). Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, carries a  
35 19 amino acid residue consensus sequenc from the PND of the V<sub>3</sub> loop of HIV-1; Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, carries a 19 amino acid

-10-

residue sequence from the PND of the V<sub>3</sub> loop of the WMJ2 HIV-1 isolate; and Ig-W is a control Ig that carries the natural D segment.

(B): The Ig-HIV-1 peptide chimeras were assayed for heavy and light chain assembly (a) by a capture assay where 10 ng of purified chimeras were incubated on plates coated with anti-human kappa mAb and captured chimeras were revealed with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled goat antibodies specific for the Fc region of human  $\gamma$ 1. The antigenicity of HIV-1 peptides on the chimeras was assayed by incubating Ig chimera coated plates with rabbit antibodies specific for either the consensus (b) or the WMJ2 (c) HIV-1 V<sub>3</sub> sequences and bound rabbit antibodies were revealed with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled goat anti-rabbit IgG antibodies. Ig-HA is a murine Ig chimera expressing a T helper epitope of the hemagglutinin antigen of influenza virus (Zaghouani et al., 1993, Science 259:224-227), and is used as negative control.

Figure 8. Production of anti-PND antibodies subsequent to immunization of baboons with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M. Adult baboons were immunized with the indicated Ig chimeras, bled and their sera were assayed for binding to V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA conjugate (a), to V<sub>3</sub>M-BSA conjugate (b), to 519-535-BSA conjugate (c), and to BSA (not shown) by radioimmunoassay. The immunization and bleeding schedule was as follows: baboons were bled at day 1 and were immunized with 500  $\mu$ g of Ig-peptide chimeras emulsified in incomplete Freund's Adjuvant at day 15, and in Alum at days 29 and 43. The animal were bled at days 65, 80, and 101. They were boosted with 500  $\mu$ g Ig-peptide chimeras in Alum at day 122 and bled at day 136. Finally, 500  $\mu$ g Ig-peptide chimeras were given as a boost at day 150 and the animals were bled at days 164 and 178. The sera were tested at various dilutions (1:10, 1:100, and 1/1000) and the data shown are those obtained with 1:100 serum dilution. Each

dilution was tested in triplicate wells and the indicated cpm represent the mean  $\pm$  SD after deduction of background cpm obtained on plates coated with BSA.

Figure 9. Radioimmunoprecipitation of HIV-1 gp120 by anti-serum from baboons immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Precipitation was performed using lysates from MN (left panel) and IIIB (right panel) isolates. 1 preimmune, 2 preimmune, and 3 preimmune, are sera collected at day 1 from baboons numbered 1 to 3; 1 a Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, anti-serum from baboon number 1 immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C collected at day 164; 2 a Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, anti-serum from baboon number 2 immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M collected at day 164; 3 a Ig-W, anti-serum from baboon number 3 immunized with Ig-W collected at day 164; Rab a 503-535, a positive control anti-serum from a rabbit immunized with the peptide 503-535 which corresponds to a conserved sequence at the carboxyterminal end of gp120 of HIV-1 and are known to precipitate the envelope protein (Zaghouani et al., 1991, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 88:55645-5649); hum HIV (+), serum from HIV-1 infected individual; and hum HIV (-), serum from HIV negative individual. These precipitation patterns were obtained with 20  $\mu$ l of baboon serum, 10  $\mu$ l of rabbit serum and 1  $\mu$ l of human serum.

Figure 10. Neutralization of MN isolate by anti-serum from baboon immunized with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Sera from baboons immunized with indicated chimeras were tested for HIV-1 MN (left) and IIIB (right) neutralizing activity. All bleeds from day 1 to day 178 were tested and the data shown are those obtained with sera collected at day 164. The percent neutralization was calculated as described (Warren et al., 1992, J. Clin. Microbiol. 30:126-131; Warren et al., 1992, J. Virol. 66:5210-5215).

Figure 11. Production of antibodies specific for V<sub>3</sub> derived peptides by human lymphocytes stimulated

with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M coupled to tetanus toxoid (Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M-TT). PBMC from HIV-1 infected individuals (CE and SLF) as well as from a non infected co-worker (K) were incubated for 7 to 10 days with graded amounts of Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M-TT (a, d, and g), Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M (b, e, and h), or Ig-W-TT (c, f, and i) and subsequently, the culture supernatants were tested for binding to V<sub>3</sub>M-BSA conjugate (top panel), to V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA conjugate (middle panel), to NP147-161-BSA (bottom panel) and to BSA (background control not shown). Each supernatant (50  $\mu$ l) was tested in triplicate and the data are presented as mean  $\pm$  SD after deduction of background obtained on plates coated with BSA. The results shown are those obtained after 10 days of incubation of the cells with the Ig-peptide chimeras and are representative of two experiments. Similar results were obtained for the experiments carried out for a period of 7 days of incubation of the PBMC with the chimeric immunoglobulins.

Figure 12. *Blood clearance of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Mice (three per group) were injected i.v. with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG as indicated in Section 9.1.. The mice were rested for 15 minutes to allow uniform distribution of radiolabeled material and then blood samples were collected at various intervals of time. Radioactivity content of total blood volume was estimated and considered as the total radioactivity injected (TRI). Blood samples were collected at indicated times and total residual radioactivity (TRR) was estimated. The percent of residual activity was estimated according to the following formula  $[1 - (TRR/TRI)] \times 100$ . Each point represents the mean  $\pm$  SD of three mice.

Figure 13. *In vivo proteolysis of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Serum samples from mice injected i.v. with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG ( $20 \times 10^6$  cpm/mouse) were collected at indicated times after

injection and 5 $\mu$ l of serum was run on an 8-17% gradient polyacrylamide gel. Separated material was electro-transferred onto PVDF membranes and exposed to Kodak X-OMAT films. Left panel shows the pattern of in vivo degradation over time of samples collected from a mouse injected with Ig-HA. Right panel shows the pattern of in vivo degradation from a mouse injected with Ig-HA-mPEG. Samples of  $^{125}$ I labeled Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG (5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cpm/5 $\mu$ l) were analyzed in parallel in the corresponding panel and used as controls (C) of non degraded material prior to inoculation into mice.

Figure 14. *Tissue distribution of native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Groups of seven mice each (15-17 g weight) were injected i.v. with  $^{125}$ I labeled Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. The mice were rested for 15 min to allow uniform distribution of the labeled material and blood samples were collected. Fragments of visceral organs were then resected at indicated times after injection. Tissue distribution of native or pegylated Ig-HA was estimated as % ID. Each point represents % ID for a mouse corresponding to the indicated time after injection.

Figure 15. *In vitro activation of HA110-120 specific LD1-24 T cell hybridomas by native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Graded amounts of chromatographically purified Ig-HA, Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-NP-mPEG were incubated with 2PK3 antigen presenting cells ("APCs"; 10<sup>4</sup>) and LD1-24 T hybridoma cells (2 x 10<sup>4</sup>). Activation of LD1-24 T cells was assessed 48 hours later by measuring IL-3 production in supernatant using the IL-3 dependent DA-1 cells (15 x 10<sup>4</sup>) and MTT assay. Each point represents the mean of quadruplets plus or minus SD.

Figure 16. *In vivo priming of HA110-120 specific T cells by native and pegylated Ig-HA.* Four groups of seven mice each were immunized subcutaneously

-14-

at the base of the tail and in the foot pads with Ig-HA or IgHA-mPEG in either saline or CFA. Ten days later the draining lymph nodes were collected and cells were cultured for 5 days in standard conditions with graded amounts of various antigens. [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine was added for 18 hours and incorporation was measured. Panels (a) and (b) represent the [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation by lymph node cells from mice immunized with Ig-HA in saline and CFA, respectively. Panels (c) and (d) represent the [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation by lymph node cells from mice immunized with Ig-HA-mPEG in saline and CFA, respectively. In all cases stimulation in vitro was carried out with graded amounts (0.5, 1, 5 and 10 µg/ml) of Ig-HA, Ig-NP, HA110-120 synthetic peptide, NP147-161 synthetic peptide or UV-inactivated PR8 virus. [<sup>3</sup>H]-thymidine incorporation upon in vitro stimulation with concanavalin A ("ConA") for three days is also indicated. Each point represents the mean of quadruplet wells plus or minus SD, after subtraction of cpm obtained in the absence of antigen.

Figure 17. Antibody response of mice immunized with native and pegylated Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C. Groups of three mice were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (open circles) or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG closed circles), bled at indicated intervals of time and the titers of antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (panels a, b, c and d) and to human isotypic determinants (panels e, f, g and h) were determined. In panel a and c the mice were immunized subcutaneously with 100 µg of either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG emulsified in CFA and boosted two weeks later with 50 µg of antigens in Incomplete Freund's adjuvant (IFA). Arrows indicate the days of immunization. The other protocols of immunizations were performed with either three injections i.p. of 100 µg of antigen in saline at seven day intervals (panels b and f), or two injections i.p. of 100 µg of antigens in saline at seven day inter-



vals (panels c and g), or a single injection i.p. of 100 $\mu$ g of antigens in saline (panels d and h). The antibody titers were determined by RIA. Each point represents the mean plus or minus S.D. of three mice.

5           Figure 18. Separation of Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates from unpegylated Ig-HA by HPLC on Q300 anion exchange column. Panel (a) shows the elution profile of the material collected from peak 1 in Figure 21 and loaded onto the Q300 column. Panel (b) shows a control  
10           elution profile of a preparation of unpegylated Ig-HA.

          Figure 19. Detection of residual mPEG in AIGs-mPEG preparations by electrophoresis on Titan agarose Gel. Samples collected at various steps of purification were run on duplicate Titan gels and  
15           either stained with Coomassie/Ponceau (R250) or precipitated with TCA. Lane 1, IgHA-mPEG conjugate after purification on anion-exchange HPLC; lane 2, unpegylated IgHA; lane 3, mPEG 5,000 ( $4 \times 10^{-4}$ M); lane  
20           4, IgHA-mPEG conjugate after first step of purification by gel filtration on ACA44 (not done in Coomassie staining).

          Figure 20. Analysis of homogeneity of AIG-mPEG preparations by SDS-PAGE. Samples collected subsequent to purification on anion-exchange HPLC were  
25           analyzed on 4-15% polyacrylamide gradient PhastGels (Pharmacia) under nonreducing conditions. Lanes 1 and 4, unpegylated Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, respectively; lanes 2 and 4, Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG, respectively (content of peak 2 in Figure 19); and lanes 3 and 6 highly  
30           derivatized Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (content of peak 1 in Figure 19).

          Figure 21. Removal of hydrolyzed mPEG from AIG-mPEG preparation by size exclusion chromatography. ACA44 Ultrogel column (80 x 1.6 cm) was calibrated at  
35           0.4 ml/min flow rate with molecular weight markers (Pharmacia, LKB) and then loaded with 10 mg of IgHA-

-16-

mPEG preparation. The column was equilibrated with either 0.1M  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$  (panel a) or PBS (panel b). The peak labeled 1 contained the conjugates and peak 2 corresponds to free mPEG. A plus sign indicates the presence of free polymer as detected by Nessler's test.

### 5. Detailed Description Of The Invention

For clarity of presentation, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description of the invention is divided into the following subsections:

- 10 (1) B cell epitopes;
- (2) T cell epitopes;
- (3) antigen binding sites;
- (4) engineering of immunoglobulin molecules;
- (5) chimeric antibodies;
- 15 (6) replacement of a CDR loop of an immunoglobulin with an epitope; and
- (7) uses of antibodies of the invention.

#### 5.1. B Cell Epitopes

The term "B cell epitope", as used herein, refers to a peptide, including a peptide comprised in a larger protein, which is able to bind to an immunoglobulin receptor of a B cell and participate in the induction of antibody production by the B cell.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the hypervariable region 3 loop ("V3 loop") of the envelope protein of human immunodeficiency virus ("HIV") type 1 is known to be a B cell epitope. Although the sequence of this epitope varies, the following consensus sequence, corresponding to residues 301-319 of HIV-1 gp120 protein, has been obtained: Arg-Lys-Ser-Ile-His-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Tyr-Thr-Thr-Gly-Glu-Ile-Ile (SEQ ID NO:1). Further description of the use of V3 loop peptide in the context of the present invention is set forth below.

Other examples of known B cell epitopes which may be used according to the invention include, but are not limited to, epitopes associated with influenza virus strains, such as Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Lys-Gly-Asp-Ser-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:2), which has been shown to be an immunodominant B cell epitope in site B of influenza HA1 hemagglutinin, the epitope Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Ser-Gly-Ser-Thr-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:3) (H3), and the epitope Trp-Leu-Thr-Lys-Glu-Gly-Ser-Asp-Tyr-Pro (SEQ ID NO:4) (H2) (Li et al., 1992, J. Virol. 66:399-404); an epitope of F protein of measles virus (residues 404-414; Ile-Asn-Gln-Asp-Pro-Asp-Lys-Ile-Leu-Thr-Tyr (SEQ ID NO:5); Parlidos et al., 1992, Eur. J. Immunol. 22:2675-2680); an epitope of hepatitis virus pre-S1 region, from residues 132-145 (Leclerc, 1991, J. Immunol. 147:3545-3552); and an epitope of foot and mouth disease VP1 protein, residues 141-160, Met-Asn-Ser-Ala-Pro-Asn-Leu-Arg-Gly-Asp-Leu-Gln-Lys-Val-Ala-Arg-Thr-Leu-Pro (SEQ ID NO:6) (Clarke et al., 1987, Nature 330:381-384).

Still further B cell epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art, as set forth in Caton et al., 1982, Cell 31:417-427.

### 5.2. T Cell Epitopes

The term "T cell epitope", as used herein, refers to a peptide, including a peptide comprised in a larger protein, which is associated with MHC self  
5 antigens and recognized by a T cell and which functionally activates the T cell.

For example, a  $T_h$  epitope is recognized by a helper T cell and promotes the facilitation of B cell antibody production via the  $T_h$  cell. Such epitopes are  
10 believed to arise when antigen presenting cells ("APCs") have taken up and degraded a foreign protein. The peptide products of degradation, which include the  $T_h$  epitope, appear on the surface of the APC in association with MHC class II antigens.

15 Further, a CTL epitope is recognized by a cytotoxic T cell; when the CTL recognizes the CTL epitope on the surface of a cell, the CTL may induce lysis of the cell. CTL epitopes are believed to arise when an APC has synthesized a protein which is then  
20 processed in the cell's cytoplasmic compartment, leading to the generation of peptides (including the CTL epitope) which associate with MHC class I antigens on the surface of the APC and are recognized by  $CD8^+$  cells, including CTL.

25 For example, and not by way of limitation, influenza A hemagglutinin (HA) protein bears, at amino acid residues 110-120, a  $T_h$  epitope having the amino acid sequence Ser-Phe-Glu-Arg-Phe-Glu-Ile-Phe-Pro-Lys-Glu (SEQ ID NO:7).

30 Other examples of known T cell epitopes include, but are not limited to, two promiscuous epitopes of t tanus toxoid, Asn-Ser-Val-Asp-Asp-Ala-Leu-Ile-Asn-Ser-Thr-Lys-Ile-Tyr-Ser-Tyr-Phe-Pro-Ser-Val (SEQ ID NO:8) and Pro-Glu-Ile-Asn-Gly-Lys-Ala-Ile-His-  
35 Leu-Val-Asn-Asn-Glu-Ser-Ser-Glu (SEQ ID NO:9) (Ho et al., 1990, Eur. J. Immunol. 20:477-483); an epitope of

cytochrome c, from residues 88-103, Ala-Asn-Glu-Arg-Ala-Asp-Leu-Ile-Ala-Tyr-Leu-Gln-Ala-Thr-Lys (SEQ ID NO:10); an epitope of *Mycobacteria* heatshock protein, residues 350-369, Asp-Gln-Val-His-Phe-Gln-Pro-Leu-Pro-Pro-Ala-Val-Val-Lys-Leu-Ser-Asp-Ala-Leu-Ile (SEQ ID NO:11) (Vordermir et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 24:2061-2067); an epitope of hen egg white lysozyme, residues 48-61, Asp-Gly-Ser-Thr-Asp-Tyr-Gly-Ile-Leu-Gln-Ile-Asn-Ser-Arg (SEQ ID NO:12) (Neilson et al., 1992, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 89: 7380-7383; an epitope of *Streptococcus A M* protein, residues 308-319, Gln-Val-Glu-Lys-Ala-Leu-Glu-Glu-Ala-Asn-Ser-Lys (SEQ ID NO:13) (Rossiter et al., 1994, Eur. J. Immunol. 24:1244-1247); and an epitope of *Staphylococcus* nuclease protein, residues 81-100, Arg-Thr-Asp-Lys-Tyr-Gly-Arg-Gly-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ile-Tyr-Ala-Asp-Gly-Lys-Met-Val-Asn (SEQ ID NO:14) (de Magistris, 1992, Cell 68:1-20). Still further T<sub>h</sub> epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art.

As another example, and not by way of limitation, PR8 influenza virus nucleoprotein bears, at amino acid residues 147-161, a CTL epitope having the amino acid sequence Thr-Tyr-Gln-Arg-Thr-Arg-Ala-Leu-Val-Arg-Thr-Gly-Met-Asp-Pro (SEQ ID NO:15).

Other examples of known CTL epitopes include, but are not limited to, those discussed in Rotzschke et al., 1991, Immunol. Today 12:447-455. Still further CTL epitopes which may be used are known or may be identified by methods known in the art.

### 5.3. Antigen Binding Sites

The term "antigen binding site", as used herein, refers to a receptor-like molecule, or a portion thereof, which is capable of binding to a second molecule, the antigen. For example, but not by way of limitation, the receptor-like molecule may preferably

be an immunoglobulin molecule, and the antigen binding site may reside in the variable region of the molecule. In alternate embodiments, however, the receptor-like molecule may be a T cell receptor or other cell-surface  
5 receptor molecule, such as an Fc receptor, a complement receptor, a cytokine receptor, etc.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the antigen is an antigen expressed by a pathogen, such as a viral, protozoan, mycoplasmal, fungal or bacterial  
10 antigen. For example, and not by way of limitation, such antigens may be HIV gp120 protein, hepatitis B virus surface antigen, influenza virus hemagglutinin proteins, measles virus, poliovirus and rhinovirus antigens, etc.

15 In alternate embodiments of the invention, the antigen is a tumor specific antigen.

In additional embodiments, the antigen is a portion of an antibody molecule which comprises the combined antigenic determinants (idiotopes) that are  
20 directed at a particular second antigen. In such cases, the antigen binding site is functionally similar to an anti-idiotypic antibody. It is well known that anti-idiotypic antibodies carrying the internal image of microbial antigens as well as antibodies against TCR of  
25 T cells can stimulate humoral and cellular anti-microbial immunity.

In still further embodiments, the antigen is a cell surface antigen. For example, the antigen may be CD3, a protein associated with the T cell receptor  
30 (TCR) of CTL. Binding of antibody to CD3 on CTL may activate the CTL, thereby effecting non-specific cell lysis.

#### 5.4. Engineering Of Immunoglobulin Molecules

According to the invention, a B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, or more than one of such elements, may be inserted into an immunoglobulin molecule (termed the "parent immunoglobulin molecule"). The molecule resulting from the insertion is termed a "chimeric immunoglobulin molecule", which may be incorporated into an antibody of the invention. The term "chimeric", as used herein, refers to a molecule which has been engineered to link together segments of nucleic acid or protein which are not typically linked together in nature. The two segments may originate from the same, or from different, species of organism. For example, it may be particularly advantageous to link together segments, all of which are derived from humans, so as to produce an entirely human chimeric antibody..

Such insertion may preferably be accomplished by replacing a segment of the gene encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with nucleic acid encoding the desired epitope or antigen binding site at a region of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule which is not essential for expression or for function of the parent immunoglobulin protein molecule (but which may abolish its original specificity) and which will position the epitope or antigen binding site such that the biological function of the inserted peptide sequence (as either an epitope or antigen-binding site) may be retained. Such retention need not be complete; the function of the inserted peptide may be either enhanced or diminished relative to the natural peptide, but its activity cannot be eliminated completely.

Replacement of a segment of the gene, and consequent replacement of a segment of its encoded immunoglobulin molecule, is advantageous as compared to

the addition of segments, because the addition of segments is associated with a limit to the length of segments which may be added. This is because if a long peptide is added, its insertion may not allow for proper folding of the immunoglobulin molecule and proper assembly with its partner immunoglobulin chain. Improperly folded molecules are frequently degraded rather than excreted. Furthermore, insertion of new amino acids, for example, but not by limitation, in the creation of a restriction endonuclease cleavage site, may create new, undesirable epitopes and thereby induce the formation of undesirable antibodies.

The nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule may be DNA or RNA, and may be comprised in a vector molecule.

The identification of an appropriate insertion site in the parent immunoglobulin molecule includes at least two considerations. The first involves a determination of which regions of the parent immunoglobulin molecule are necessarily or desirably retained. For example, it may be desirable to maintain basic antibody structure, and to retain the constant regions of the molecule, in which case it may be particularly desirable to insert the epitope or antigen-binding site into a hypervariable region (CDR; see for example, section 5.6, *infra*). Further, it is undesirable to insert sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site into a region of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule which is important for efficient transcription or translation or which is not transcribed into RNA or not translated into protein. It may not be necessary, however, for the antigen-binding specificity of the parent immunoglobulin to be retained; to the contrary, it may be desirable that such antigen-binding capability be lost, as loss of this capability may be indicative or con-



sequent to the insertion of epitope or new antigen-binding sequence.

The second consideration relates to the functional activity of the inserted epitope or antigen binding site. Preferably the epitope or antigen-binding site is inserted so as to be positioned at a superficial location (i.e., an exposed area) on the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, such that it is capable of interacting with a B cell or T cell or of binding to an antigen.

The epitope or antigen binding site (or more than one of such elements) may be inserted into the parent immunoglobulin molecule by any method known in the art. Preferably, nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site may be inserted into the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule in such a manner that a portion of immunoglobulin-encoding sequence is replaced by the nucleic acid sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site. By replacing a portion of the sequence, the overall configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule may be minimally disturbed. In contrast, the addition of inserted sequences would be expected to distort the geometry of the immunoglobulin molecule; as the size or hydrophobicity/hydrophilicity of the inserted sequence increases, such effects may become problematic.

Most preferably, the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site is inserted into the immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid by polymerase chain reaction ("PCR") techniques.

Nucleic acid engineered to encode a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule according to the invention may be cloned using standard techniques. Detailed DNA cloning methods, exemplary of standard laboratory techniques, are provided in a variety of sources. See e.g. Sambrook et al., "Molecular Cloning A Laboratory

Manual", Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, NY (1989). Specific, nonlimiting examples of the preparation of nucleic acids encoding particular chimeric immunoglobulin molecules are set forth below.

5           Once the nucleic acid encoding a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule has been cloned, it may be introduced into a suitable host for expression of the encoded protein. The cloned nucleic acid may be first inserted into an appropriate expression vector or may  
10 be transfected into the cell as linear DNA for recombination with the host genome. Suitable expression vectors include but are not limited to plasmids, viruses and retroviruses. Choice of a suitable vector will be determined in part on the choice of the host  
15 used for protein expression.

Suitable hosts include but are not limited to bacteria, mammalian cell lines, whole animals such as transgenic mice and insect cell lines. Insect cell lines are less expensive to maintain and produce more  
20 protein compared to mammalian cell lines and are thus more suitable to large-scale protein production. Genes expressed by insect cell lines do not contain exons therefore the exons should be excised from nucleic acid encoding chimeric immunoglobulin molecules prior to  
25 their expression in insect cell lines. Excision is relatively straightforward and can be accomplished for instance directly by oligonucleotide directed site-specific mutagenesis or indirectly by cDNA cloning.

Transfer of the gene into the host can be  
30 done by any of the well known means in the art. For example, methods of gene transfer include but are not limited to  $\text{CaCl}_2$  mediated transfection in the case of bacteria and in the case of eukaryotic cells,  $\text{CaPO}_4$  mediated transfection, viral infection including retro-  
35 viral latent infection, electroporation, liposome mediated DNA transfer and microinjection among others.

-25-

Any suitable method of purifying proteins produced by the host may be used in the practice of the present invention. See e.g. Webb et al., "Cell-surface Expression and Purification of Human CD4 Produced in  
5 Baculovirusinfected Insect Cells", Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 85:77317735 (1989); and Moran et al., "Characterization of Variable-Region Genes and Shared Crossreactive Idiotypes of Antibodies Specific for  
10 Antigens of Various Influenza Viruses", Vir. Immunol., 1:1-12 (1987).

In preferred embodiments of the invention, the chimeric immunoglobulin of the invention has a Y shaped base portion which is the same as some or all of the constant regions of human immunoglobulin. This use  
15 of human immunoglobulin avoids the problem of the modified immunoglobulin being recognized as a foreign species itself, and thus facilitates its use in human therapy. Additionally the base portion may confer effector functions on the molecule such as in vivo  
20 stability, Fc receptor binding, protein A binding, complement fixation, and placental transfer (in the case of IgG). It will thus be understood that modified sequences based on immunoglobulin molecules are within the scope of the present invention so long as the  
25 modification does not give rise to immune rejection problems.

For example, and not by way of limitation, the following general method may be used. The nucleic acid sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding  
30 site may be analyzed to search for and identify a restriction enzyme (referred to as "enzyme A") which cleaves at one site in the nucleic acid sequence. If no such site is present, one may be engineered into the sequence; however, it should be noted that it is  
35 preferable not to add nucleic acid sequence, in that such addition may, as set forth above, distort the

conformation of the encoded immunoglobulin molecule. Four PCR primers may then be prepared. The first PCR primer (termed "P1") may be essentially complementary to the sense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule. The second PCR primer (termed "P2") may be complementary to the antisense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule, but may further comprise, at its 5' end, a portion of the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen-binding site to be inserted, which portion is in frame and spans the cleavage site for enzyme A and which replaces a portion of the parent immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid of similar size. The third PCR primer (termed "P3") may be essentially complementary to the antisense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule. The fourth PCR primer (termed "P4") may be complementary to the sense strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent strand of the nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule, but may further comprise, at its 5' end, a portion of the nucleic acid encoding the epitope or antigen binding site to be inserted, which portion is in frame and spans the cleavage site for enzyme A, and which replaces a portion of the parent immunoglobulin-encoding nucleic acid of similar size. The portions of nucleic acid sequence encoding epitope or antigen-binding site in P2 and P4 taken together contain the entire sequence encoding the epitope or antigen binding site to be inserted. P1 and P3 may be positioned on opposite sides of the designated insertion site. P1 and P2 primers may then be used in PCR to produce a fragment X. P3 and P4 primers may be used in PCR to produce a fragment Y. The resulting fragments may then be cleaved by enzyme A, and then fragments X and Y can be ligated together.

The ligated fragment XY may then be inserted, in the context of nucleic acid encoding appropriate regions of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, into a suitable vector, which may then be used to express  
5 chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, using standard techniques. If the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is a heavy chain molecule, it is preferably expressed in a cell concurrently with the expression of a compatible light chain immunoglobulin molecule. For example, if  
10 the parent immunoglobulin is a heavy chain known to form a functional antibody with a particular light chain, the chimeric immunoglobulin is preferably expressed together with that light chain. A particularly preferred cell for expression of chimeric  
15 immunoglobulin is a non-secreting myeloma cell line, such as the BALB/c SP2/0 cell line, which may be obtained from the American Type Culture Collection, where the cell line is designated "SP2/0-Ag14", assigned the accession number ATCC CRL 1581.

20 In Example Sections 6, 7 and 8 provided below, two DNA expression vectors, pSV2gpt-9lA3VH-CIgG2b and pSV2neo-9lA3L, were utilized, which carry, respectively, a heavy and a light chain gene of an anti-arsonate antibody called 9lA3. The pSV2gpt-  
25 9lA3VH-CIgG2b carries an IgG2b constant region gene inserted in the HindIII restriction endonuclease site of the vector and a 5.5 kb DNA segment containing the rearranged VH DJ gene of the heavy chain of the 9lA3 antibody inserted in the EcoRI restriction endonuclease  
30 site as shown in Figure 3. The 5.5 kb fragment also contains the heavy chain Ig promoter and enhancer. The pSV2neo-9lA3L carries the rearranged VL and CL genes and the necessary regulatory elements inserted into the EcoRI and BamHI restriction endonuclease sites.

35 It has now been shown that cotransfection of these vectors into the nonsecreting myeloma cell line,

SP2/0 leads to the expression of a functional 91A3 antibody. This antibody derives its VH from the J558 family and its D segment is probably involved in antigen binding. These observations suggest that these D segments are surface exposed. In fact, the hydrophilicity profile of the 91A3 VH also predicts that its D segment is surface exposed. For these reasons the 91A3VH DJ was chosen to construct a chimeric immunoglobulin carrying various foreign epitopes, including a CD8 epitope from influenza virus nucleoprotein, a CD4 epitope from influenza virus hemagglutinin, and B cell epitopes from HIV-1 or influenza viruses.

In Example Section 7, below, the D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody was replaced by influenza virus nucleoprotein (NP) epitope which is capable of being recognized by CTL cells. The 9 amino acid D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody was replaced with a 15 amino acid NP CTL epitope as illustrated in Figure 3. The NP epitope corresponds to amino acid residues 147-161 within the NP of PR8 virus and is known to induce virus specific CTLs in Balb/C but not C57BL/6 mice.

The construct was expressed in the SP2/0 myeloma cell line, and was recognized by anti-NP antibodies. Such transfected SP2/0 were killed by T cells specific for the NP epitope.

In the influenza system, anti-hemagglutinin ("anti-HA") antibodies play a major protective role since they prevent viral attachment. The anti-HA antibody response is T dependent requiring both helper T cells and B cells. Since the ultimate goal of a vaccine is to induce protective immunity, it may be desirable to produce a chimeric antibody bearing both B and T<sub>h</sub> cell epitopes.

A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule carrying a HA T<sub>h</sub> epitope was prepared (Zaghouani et al., 1993,

Science 259:224-227) using methods analogous to those set forth above. The 5.5 kb DNA fragment encoding the heavy chain variable region ("V<sub>H</sub>") of the 91A3 antibody was used in PCR mutagenesis (Zaghouani et al., 1992, J. Immunol. 148: 3604) to replace the D segment with a nucleotide sequence encoding a T<sub>h</sub> epitope of the HA of PR8 influenza virus. This epitope corresponds to amino acid residues 110 to 120 of HA and is recognized by CD4<sup>+</sup> T cells in association with I-E<sup>d</sup> MHC class II molecules. The mutated V<sub>H</sub> gene, from which the D segment was deleted and the cognate peptide sequence inserted in the correct frame, was subcloned in a pSV2gpt vector upstream of the exons of the BALB/c gamma 2b constant region from which the MOPC 141 VDJ fragment had been excised. To express this gene with the homologous light chain gene, the vector was transfected into the non-Ig-secreting BALB/c myeloma B cell line SP2/0, together with a pSV2-neo vector carrying the rearranged 91A3 light chain gene. The resulting antibody was termed "Ig-HA".

In order to introduce a B cell epitope into Ig-HA, the CDR2 loop of Ig-HA may be replaced with 10 amino acid residues, WLTEDEGSYP (SEQ ID NO:17) which have been shown to be an immunodominant B cell epitope in site B of PR8 virus hemagglutinin, using similar methods. A DNA fragment encoding the H chain V region, encompassing the H chain Ig promoter and enhancer, the leader sequence, the V-HA110-120-J chimeric variable region, and the major intron of Ig-HA may be subcloned and used as a template DNA along with four different primers in two sets of PCR reactions designed to replace the CDR2 loop with nucleotide sequences that will encode the HA B cell peptide. The sequences of the primers may be as follows: Primer P1 may have the sequence (5'-AGCTGAGGACAAAGAAGA-3') (SEQ ID NO:18), complementary to sequences within the intron region

downstream of the Apa I site. Primer P2 may have the sequence (5'-CCGAAAAGG-AGGGATCCTATCCCAAGACCACACTGACTGTACACAAA-3') (SEQ ID NO:19), which contains 5' unmatched sequences corresponding to a portion of the B cell epitope of HA and 3' sequences complementary to sequences starting at the last base downstream of the CDR2. Primer P3 may have the sequence (5'-CAAATCACCCAAGTGTATGGC-3') (SEQ ID NO:20), which is complementary to noncoding sequences upstream of the NcoI site and primer and P4 may have the sequence (5'-GGGATAGG-ATCCCTCCTTTTCGGTTAACCATCCAATCCATTCCAGCCCCTGTCCAGGCCT-3') (SEQ ID NO:21), which contains 5' sequences corresponding to a portion of the B cell epitope of HA epitope and 3' sequences complementary to sequences starting at the first base upstream of the CDR2 loop. In the first set of reactions, 100ng of template DNA may be used with 500ng of each primer P1 and P2 to generate a fragment spanning a portion of the B cell epitope and V-HA110-120-J and intron sequences. In the second set of PCR reactions, 100 ng of template DNA may be used with primers P3 and P4 (500ng each) to generate a fragment spanning the opposite portion of the B cell epitope of HA, upstream V region sequences and leader and promoter sequences. The two fragments may then be digested with BamHI and ligated through this intentionally created site to generate a fragment containing the full B cell epitope sequence in place of CDR2. This fragment may be digested with NcoI and ApaI and subcloned into pUC19-91A3 V<sub>H</sub> from which an NcoI-ApaI fragment was cut out. Figure 5 illustrates the insertion of B cell epitope of HA sequence in place of CDR2 segment. Nucleotide sequencing analysis (Figure 6) of two clones produced according to the above method, termed C3 and C8, show the deletion of CDR2 sequence of 91A3 V<sub>H</sub>-HA110-120 and insertion in the correct frame of



-31-

sequence encoding the B cell epitope. The new 5.5 kb 91A3 doubly chimeric fragment may be subcloned into the EcoR1 site of the expression vector pSV2-gpt C $\gamma$ 2b in front of the exons encoding the constant region of a BALB/c  $\gamma$ 2b. The resulting vector may be cotransfected with pSV2-neo-91A3 V<sub>k</sub>J<sub>k</sub>C<sub>k</sub> into the nonsecreting BALB/c myeloma B cell line, SP2/0. Positive clones secreting Ig-HA-B may be selected with mycophenolic acid and geneticin, and Ig-HA-B may be purified from transfectoma supernatant on a rat anti-mouse K light chain antibody-sepharose column.

The present invention provides for purified and isolated nucleic acid molecules encoding chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, as set forth above, to such nucleic acid molecules comprised in suitable vector molecules, and to cells and cell lines into which such nucleic acid molecules have been introduced.

#### 5.5. Chimeric Antibodies

The present invention relates to chimeric antibodies which comprise parent immunoglobulin molecules to which have been added one or more elements selected from the group consisting essentially of B cell epitopes, T cell epitopes, and antigen binding sites. Such epitopes and/or antigen binding sites may preferably be added by genetic engineering of immunoglobulin genes, as described above.

The present invention provides for compositions comprising purified chimeric antibody molecules which comprise chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, as described above.

A first nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a B cell epitope. An example

of such an antibody is set forth in Example Section 8, below.

A second nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified  
5 chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a T<sub>H</sub> cell epitope. An example of such an antibody is Ig-HA, described above.

A third nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified  
10 chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a CTL cell epitope. An example of such an antibody is set forth in Example Section 7, below.

A fourth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising  
15 purified chimeric antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises an antigen binding site. For example, such an antigen binding site may be able to bind to CD3 antigen on the surface  
20 of CTLs, which may activate such CTLs.

In additional embodiments of the invention, recombinant antibodies may be produced which contain more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, including combinations of these  
25 elements. Such antibodies may be produced by any of the methods set forth above, including, but not restricted to, methods which replace portions of immunoglobulin genes and proteins. That is to say, the addition of  
30 nucleic acid or amino acid to immunoglobulin genes or proteins, respectively, is within the scope of the invention. The following embodiments relate to antibodies which contain more than one epitope or antigen binding site.

A fifth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified  
35 chimeric antibody comprising both a CTL epitope as well

-33-

as a target antigen binding site. The CTL epitope and antigen binding site may reside within the same chimeric immunoglobulin molecule.

5 A sixth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising both a B cell epitope as well as a  $T_h$  epitope. The B cell epitope and  $T_h$  epitope may reside within the same chimeric immunoglobulin molecule or in different chimeric immunoglobulin mole-  
10 cules. An example of such a chimeric antibody is described in the preceding section, and includes a B cell HA epitope as well a  $T_h$  HA epitope. Further examples of B/ $T_h$  combinations include, but are not limited to, combinations where both epitopes derive from the same  
15 pathogen, such as influenza virus, measles virus, respiratory syncytial virus, tetanus toxoid, HIV-1, and HIV-2, to name but a few. Preferably, the B cell epitope resides in the variable region of both arms of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the  $T_h$  epitope resides in  
20 the variable region of both arms of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin. Such a chimeric antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

25 A seventh nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising purified chimeric antibody comprising a B cell epitope and is covalently linked to a non-immunoglobulin molecule bearing a  $T_h$  epitope. Preferably, the B cell  
30 epitope resides in the variable region of both arms of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the  $T_h$  epitope is covalently linked to the hinge region of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin. For example, the non-immunoglobulin molecule may be tetanus toxoid, as discussed in Example  
35 Section 8, below. Such a chimeric antibody may induce the production of antibodies directed toward the B cell

epitope, thereby augmenting the effectiveness of the humoral component of the immune response.

An eighth nonlimiting embodiment of the invention provides for a composition comprising  
5 purified chimeric antibody comprising a first antigen binding site which recognizes a tumor cell or pathogen and a second antigen binding site that binds to a CTL surface protein, wherein binding of the second antigen binding site to the CTL surface protein activates the  
10 CTL. For example, the first antigen binding site may bind to a viral antigen, such as an influenza or HIV antigen, and the second antigen binding site may bind to CD3. Figure 3 depicts such an antibody. The first antigen binding site may bind to viral antigen expressed on the surface of an infected cell, and the second  
15 antigen binding site may bind to a CTL, thereby bringing the CTL into proximity to the infected cell and activating the lytic activity of the CTL. Preferably, the first antigen binding site resides in the variable region of one arm of a Y-shaped immunoglobulin, and the second antigen binding site resides  
20 in the variable region of the other arm of the Y-shaped immunoglobulin.

Various chimeric antibodies which, according  
25 to the invention, comprise chimeric immunoglobulins bearing more than one B cell epitope, T cell epitope, or antigen binding site, may be prepared by a number of methods. Without limitation, these methods include the following. If one chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is  
30 to be expressed, nucleic acid encoding that molecule may be introduced into a cell for expression, as described above. If more than one chimeric immunoglobulin molecule is to be expressed, nucleic acid molecules encoding such molecules may be co-introduced  
35 into a cell for expression or, alternatively, nucleic acid encoding the various molecules may be introduced

-35-

into separate parental cells which are later fused to produce a combination of chimeric immunoglobulin molecules. In such case, prior to fusion, each of the parental cells may be induced to express a different selectable marker, such that fusions between different species of parental cells may be identified by selecting for the presence of the appropriate combination of selectable markers. For example, genes encoding different selectable markers may be introduced into the different parental cell lines.

It has further been discovered that the stability of such recombinant antibodies and/or their ability to enhance the immune response is augmented when the antibodies are mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol ("pegylated"). Mild derivatization of chimeric immunoglobulins with mPEG may significantly increase their half lives and stability without alteration of biological activity. The increase in half life may enhance the immunogenicity of such molecules and obviate the requirement for adjuvants. For example, and not by way of limitation, the beneficial effects of pegylation of various chimeric antibodies described herein is set forth in Example Sections 9 and 10, below.

#### 5.6 Replacement Of A CDR Loop Of An Immunoglobulin With One Or More Epitopes

A preferred embodiment of the present invention relates to a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology which comprises a parent immunoglobulin molecule from which a CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope or a B cell epitope. The T cell epitope can be a CTL epitope or a helper T cell epitope. The inserted T cell or B cell epitope occurs in the chimeric immuno-

globulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and retains its specificity as an epitope. Examples of such immunoglobulin molecules are set forth in Example Sections 7 and 8, and further examples of B and T cell epitopes are set forth in the preceding sections 5.1 and 5.2.

As used herein, a foreign peptide sequence refers to a peptide sequence which does not naturally occur at the region of the parent immunoglobulin molecule into which it is inserted. It is preferable that the B cell or the T cell epitope inserted in place of the deleted CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule be of approximately the same size as the deleted CDR loop.

A general method of preparing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of the present invention using the recombinant DNA technology and polymerase chain reaction is set forth in the preceding section 5.4. This general method can be modified and used in generating the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein, which contain a B cell or a T cell epitope in place of the deleted CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule. Furthermore, a method of replacing a CDR3 loop (D segment) with a B cell epitope or a T cell epitope is specifically set forth in Example Sections 7 and 8 and a method of replacing a CDR2 loop is specifically set forth in the preceding section 5.4. These methods can be modified to be used in replacing a CDR1 loop with a B cell or a T cell epitope

The CDR loop deleted and replaced by a B cell or a T cell epitope can be CDR1, CDR2, or CDR3 (D segment) of the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule or it can be CDR1, CDR2, or CDR3 of the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule.

The present invention also relates to a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology which comprises a parent immunoglobulin molecule from which a CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope and from which another CDR loop (a CDR region) has been deleted and replaced by a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope. The T cell epitope can be a CTL epitope or a helper T cell epitope. The CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope are not identical. In such an immunoglobulin molecule, the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope both occur in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule, each in place of the corresponding CDR loop which has been deleted, and retain their respective specificity as an epitope.

The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule containing both a T cell epitope and a B cell epitope, as described above, can have a variety of configurations. For example, the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope can each replace a CDR loop of the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, the CDR loop being selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment) or the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope can each replace a CDR loop of the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, the CDR loop being selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3. It is also possible to engineer the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule such that the T cell epitope replaces a CDR loop located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, while the B cell epitope replaces a CDR loop located in the light chain thereof, or the other way around.

The T cell epitope and/or the B cell epitope inserted into the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of

the present invention can be a viral epitope. The viral epitope can be derived from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and  
5 human immunodeficiency virus.

The present invention also provides for compositions comprising chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein above. The present invention further provides vaccines comprising those compositions and a  
10 suitable carrier and methods of conferring immunity to a subject against a pathogen which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of vaccines. Utilities of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules of the present invention, including their diagnostic in  
15 vitro utilities are set forth in section 5.7.

The present invention further provides purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecules encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described herein, expression vectors into which those  
20 recombinant nucleic acid molecules are introduced, and host cells transfected with those vectors.

The present invention provides a method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule comprising deleting a portion of nucleic acid sequence  
25 encoding a parent immunoglobulin molecule and replacing the deleted portion with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing the chimeric  
30 nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and maintains its specificity as an epitope.

35 By using a nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope in place of the nucleic acid sequence



-39-

encoding the T cell epitope in the method described above, a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule containing a B cell epitope can be prepared, such that the B cell epitope occurs in place of the deleted CDR loop in the parent immunoglobulin molecule and maintains its specificity as an epitope.

The present invention also provides a method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule comprising deleting and replacing a first portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding a parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope and deleting and replacing a second portion of nucleic acid encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the first portion encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and the second portion encoding another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin, and then expressing the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope occur in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loops and maintain their specificity as epitopes.

In one embodiment of the present invention, the parent immunoglobulin used in preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules described above is a human immunoglobulin molecule. In another embodiment of the present invention, the parent immunoglobulin is a murine immunoglobulin molecule. In yet another embodiment of the invention, the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises the constant domain of the human immunoglobulin molecule and the variable domain of the murine immunoglobulin molecule.

The present invention also relates to a method of increasing the stability and the half life of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules of the present invention

which comprises mildly derivatizing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules with polyethylene glycol. The present invention further relates to compositions comprising these chimeric immunoglobulin molecules which have been mildly derivatized by reacting the chimeric immunoglobulin molecules with polyethylene glycol (pegylated), vaccines comprising these pegylated chimeric immunoglobulin molecules, and methods of immunizing a subject against pathogens which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the pegylated chimeric immunoglobulin molecules.

#### 5.7. Use Of Antibodies Of The Invention

The chimeric antibodies of the present invention may be useful in the diagnosis and treatment of a wide variety of malignancies and viral infections. They are particularly well suited for treatment of infections by viruses which upon infection of the host cell cause expression of viral coat proteins prior to cell death. In most cases this cellular expression of viral coat proteins leads to a cell surface form of such proteins. Examples include but are not limited to the hemagglutinin protein complex of influenza virus, the env proteins of murine leukemia virus, the env proteins of Rous sarcoma virus and the env proteins of HIV. Often the viral protein expressed by infected cells is the same viral coat protein which recognizes and binds to the cell receptor protein to initiate infection. This is true in the case of HIV.

Accordingly, the present invention provides for a method of treating a viral (or bacterial, protozoan, mycoplasmal, or fungal) infection comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. The term "treating" as used herein

refers to an amelioration in the clinical condition of the subject, and does not necessarily indicate that a complete cure has been achieved. An amelioration in clinical condition refers to a prolonged survival, a  
5 decreased duration of illness, or a subjective improvement in the quality of life of the subject.

The present invention provides for a method of enhancing an immune response directed toward a viral, protozoan, mycoplasmal, bacterial or fungal  
10 pathogen, in a subject in need of such treatment, comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. The phrase "enhancing an  
15 immune response" refers to an increase in cellular and/or humoral immunity. In preferred embodiments, the amount of cellular and/or humoral immunity is increased in the subject by at least 25 percent. Such an enhanced immune response may be desirable during the course of  
20 infection, or before infection may have occurred (for example, in the context of a vaccine).

The present invention also provides for a method of treating a malignancy or other neoplasm comprising administering, to a subject in need of such  
25 treatment, an effective amount of a composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section. In addition to the definition of "treating" set forth above, tumor regression, such as a decrease in tumor mass or in the number of metastases,  
30 of preferably at least 25 percent would be considered "treating".

Further, the present invention provides for a method of enhancing an immune response directed toward a malignancy or other neoplasm, in a subject in need of  
35 such treatment, comprising administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, an effective amount of a

composition comprising purified recombinant antibody, as described in the preceding section.

The foregoing methods may also be practiced by administering, to a subject in need of such treatment, a cell expressing chimeric immunoglobulin molecules. For example, B cells may be harvested from a subject suffering from an infection with a pathogen or from a malignancy. The collected B cells may be transfected with genes encoding chimeric immunoglobulins comprising the appropriate T cell epitope. Transfected B cells expressing the chimeric immunoglobulin may then be reintroduced into the subject in order to sensitize the subject to the pathogen or malignancy and thereby enhance the subject's immune response toward the pathogen or malignancy.

As with all pharmaceutical compositions, the effective amounts of the antibodies of the invention may be determined empirically. Factors to be considered include the condition to be treated, whether or not the antibody will be complexed with or covalently attached to a toxin, route of administration for the composition, i.e. intravenous, intramuscular, subcutaneous, etc., and the number of doses to be administered. Such factors are known in the art and it is well within the skill of physicians to make such determinations without undue experimentation.

The recombinant antibodies of the invention offer a number of in vitro utilities, and the invention provides for methods based on such utilities. Such utilities include, but are not limited to, the following.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a B cell epitope may be used to label B cells. For example, such an antibody may be detectably labelled, and may be used to quantitate the number of B cells binding to the particular

epitope in a sample of lymphocytes collected from the subject. Similarly, such an antibody, which need not be detectably labelled, may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount a humoral response to the particular B cell epitope. The inability of lymphocytes of a subject to produce antibodies after exposure to the chimeric immunoglobulin may indicate that the subject is not capable of developing humoral immunity to the epitope. Further, such an antibody may be used to collect B cells which recognize the epitope; for example, the antibody may be fluorescently labelled, so that the B cells may be collected by fluorescence-activated cell sorting.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a  $T_h$  cell epitope may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount an immune response to the particular  $T_h$  cell epitope. For example, peripheral blood lymphocytes may be collected from a test subject, and then, in a standard proliferative assay, may be exposed to the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule bearing the  $T_h$  epitope. The amount of proliferation may then be determined, and may be compared to the degree of proliferation exhibited by peripheral blood lymphocytes from a control subject who has not been exposed to the epitope. A result, in which the amount of proliferation exhibited by the lymphocytes from the test subject is significantly greater than the amount of proliferation exhibited by the lymphocytes from the control subject, positively correlates with prior exposure of the test subject to the epitope, and may indicate that the test subject is or has been infected with a pathogen containing the epitope.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises a CTL cell epitope may be used to test the ability of a subject to mount a

cellular response to the particular CTL cell epitope. For example, peripheral blood lymphocytes may be collected from a test subject and exposed to the detectably labelled target cells (such as hybridoma cells) expressing chimeric immunoglobulin bearing the CTL epitope. The ability of the peripheral blood lymphocytes to lyse the target cells provides an evaluation of the ability of the subject to mount an effective cell-mediated immune response against a pathogen or tumor cell expressing the CTL epitope. The inability of lymphocytes of a subject to exhibit cytotoxic activity may indicate that the subject is not capable of exercising cellular immunity to the epitope.

An antibody comprising a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule which comprises an antigen binding site may be used in diagnostic assays to detect the presence of a particular target antigen, which binds to the antibody binding site. For example, a sample collected from a subject may be immobilized, and then reacted with an effective amount of the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule. Labelled secondary antibodies, directed against the immunoglobulin molecule, may then be used to detect the presence of, and/or quantitate the amount of, chimeric immunoglobulin bound. The presence of bound chimeric immunoglobulin may be used to confirm the presence of, and/or quantitate the amount, of target antigen present. Antigens that may be detected in this manner may include prostate specific antigen, Hep BS Ag, HIV antigens, etc.

The following examples are meant to illustrate but not limit this invention.

6. Example: Preparation Of Recombinant Antibodies  
Comprising Various Epitopes

All enzymes were used according to the manufacturer's instructions (New England Biolabs, Beverly, MA). Unless otherwise specifically mentioned, DNA cloning was performed according to the methods described in Maniatis et al., "Molecular Cloning a Laboratory Manual," Cold Spring Harbor Press, Cold Spring Harbor NY (1982).

Using this method the D segment of VH region of 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody is replaced with one of:

(a) The consensus sequence of the B cell epitope of the cysteine loop of gp120. The sequence of this epitope varies, however, a consensus sequence deduced from 245 HIV isolate sequences borne by 245 isolates was established. The amino acid sequence of the consensus corresponds to residues 301-319 of gp120 and is as follows: Arg-Lys-Ser-Ile-His-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Tyr-Thr-ThrGly-Glu-Ile-Ile (termed "V<sub>3</sub>C");

(b) The T cell epitope of residues 12-35 of HIV-1 HxB2 isolate Glu-Leu-Asp-Arg-Trp-Glu-Lys-Ile-Arg-Leu-Arg-Pro-Gly-Gly-Lys- Lys-Lys-Tyr-Lys-Leu-Lys-His-Ile-Val (SEQ ID NO:22);

(c) A T cell epitope of HIV-1 reverse transcriptase; residues 325-349 Ala-Ile-Phe-Gln-Ser-Ser-Met-Thr-Lys-Ile-Leu-Glu-Pro-Phe-Arg-Lys-Gln-Asn-Pro-Asp-Ile-Val-Ile-Tyr-Gln (SEQ ID NO:23);

(d) The amino acid sequence corresponding to the amino acid residues of the principal neutralizing determinant (PND) of WMJ2 HIV-1 isolate at the same positions as the consensus sequence of (a) Arg-Arg-Ser-Leu-Ser-Ile-Gly-Pro-Gly-Arg-Ala-Phe-Arg-The-Arg-Glu-Ile-Ile-Gly (termed "V<sub>3</sub>M") (SEQ ID NO:24);

(e) The amino acid sequence corresponding to amino acid residues 519-535 of HIV-1

IIIB isolate Ala-Val-Gly-Ile-Gly-Ala-Leu-Phe-Leu-Gly-Phe-Leu-Gly-Ala-Ala-Gly-Ser (SEQ ID NO:25);

(f) The amino acid sequence corresponding to residues 110-120 of the hemagglutinin of influenza A virus Ser-Phe-Glu-Arg-Phe-Glu-Ile-Phe-Pro-Lys-Glu (SEQ ID NO:7);

(g) The NP 147-161 peptide corresponding to nucleoprotein of PR8 influenza virus peptide The-Tyr-Gln-Arg-The-Arg-Ala-Leu-Val-Arg-The-Gly-Met-Asp-Pro (SEQ ID NO:15); and

(h) The influenza virus B cell epitope W-L-T-E-K-E-G-S-Y-P (SEQ ID NO:26).

The foregoing epitopes were inserted into the  $V_H$  gene of the 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody by replacing the parental D segment (CDR3, for PR8 HA110-120) or CDR2 (for PR8 HA B cell epitope) using methods exemplified by the insertion of the NP epitope, described in detail in the following section.

## 7. Example: Insertion Of The NP CTL Epitope Into An Anti-Arsonate Parent Immunoglobulin Molecule

### 7.1. Preparation Of The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Molecule

The procedure for deleting the 27 nucleotides coding for the D segment of the heavy chain of the 91A3 antibody, and the insertion of 45 bases corresponding to the NP epitope, is summarized in Fig. 4.

Briefly, cloning was done by subcloning the 5.5 kb 91A3VH DJ fragment into the EcoRI restriction endonuclease site of the pUC19 plasmid. Two unique restriction endonuclease sites (NcoI and ApaI, 638 bp apart,) surrounding the D region were identified. The primers P1 and P3, shown in Fig. 4, are exactly complementary to their corresponding strands. However P2 matches with its complementary strand down to the last nucleotide 5' of the D region (filled part of the bar).



-47-

The remaining 30 nucleotides (hatched part of the bar) are those of the NP epitope. Primer P4 contains nucleotides complementary to the corresponding strand down to the last nucleotide 5' of the D region. The remaining unmatched nucleotides correspond to 30 bases of the NP epitope. An SpeI restriction endonuclease site was created within the overlapping nucleotides between P2 and P4.

Using polymerase chain reaction, two fragments were produced. In one set of reactions, the annealing of the P3 and P4 primers to the plasmid resulted in the production of 570 bp fragment. In another set of reactions, the annealing of P1 and P2 to plasmid provided a 326 bp fragment. To delete the NP overlapping sequences, both fragments were digested with SpeI. The ligation of fragments, sharing each half of the NP epitope, generated an 870 bp fragment containing the 45 bp NP epitope inserted in-frame. The following steps consist of digesting both the original pUC19-VHDJ91A3 and the 870 bp fragment with the restriction endonucleases NcoI and ApaI. The ligation of the 656 bp fragment into the digested plasmid provides a vector possessing the coding region of the NP epitope instead of the D segment. The 5.5 kb EcoRI VH-NP.J fragment was then subcloned into the EcoRI restriction endonuclease site of the expression vector.

Cotransfection was done using the gene pulsar transfection apparatus according to the manufacturer's instructions (Biorad). Cotransfection of the pSV2gpt-91A3-VHNPJ-CIgG2b and the pSV2neo-91A3LY plasmids into the non-secreting myeloma cell line SP2/0 and selection with mycophenolic acid and geneticin (G418) resulted in the synthesis and secretion of the 91A3-NP chimeric antibody.

## 7.2. The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Contains The NP Epitope

The results presented in Tables 1 and 2 show that chimeric immunoglobulin bearing the influenza virus NP epitope bound rabbit anti-NP antibodies, indicating that the NP epitope had been successfully inserted into the 91A3 antibody. Further, the chimeric immunoglobulin exhibited substantially diminished binding to arsonate, presumably because the D-segment, which plays an important role in the binding of arsonate, was replaced with viral NP peptide.

TABLE 1

Immunochemical Properties of Immunoglobulins  
Produced by SP2/0 Coinfected with  
pSV2qpt-91A3qpt-91A3V-NP-J and pSV2neo-91A3L

| Binding to             | 91A3HL-NP        | 91A3HL       |
|------------------------|------------------|--------------|
| Ars BSA                | 15,445 $\pm$ 101 | 792 $\pm$ 22 |
| Rabbit Antimouse IgG2b | 42,724 $\pm$ 127 | 41,422       |

Binding to arsonate was determined by incubation of 10 ng of antibody on a microtiter plate coated with either arsonate BSA or BSA alone and bound antibodies were revealed with  $^{125}$ I rat antimouse  $\kappa$  antibody. Binding to anti-isotype antibody was performed by incubation of 10 ng of antibodies on plates coated with rat antimouse  $\kappa$  mAb and bound antibody was revealed using  $^{125}$ I goat antimouse IgG2b antibodies.

**TABLE 2**  
Binding Properties of 91A3 Chimeric Immunoglobulin  
 (in cpm)

|   |                     |                         |                    |
|---|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 5 | Binding to          | 91A3HL-NP<br>(chimeric) | 91A3HL<br>(parent) |
|   | Arsonate BSA<br>101 | 792 $\pm$ 22            | 15,445 $\pm$       |
|   | Anti-NP antibodies  | 5,616 $\pm$ 217         | 1,246 $\pm$ 76     |

10 Binding to arsonate-BSA was carried out as described above. Binding to rabbit anti-NP antibodies was assessed by incubating transfectoma supernatants on microtiter plates coated with affinity chromatography purified anti-NP antibodies and bound antibodies were revealed using  $^{125}\text{I}$  goat antimouse IgG2b.

15 **7.3. The Chimeric Immunoglobulin Activates CTLs**

NP-specific CTL were able to kill SP2/0 transfected with chimeric immunoglobulin gene, indicating that the NP epitope was expressed on the cell surface, as in cells infected with the virus.

20 NP-specific cytotoxic T cell clones were generated from BALB/c mice immunized with PR8 influenza virus and expanded in vitro with irradiated spleen cells coated with 5  $\mu\text{g}$  NP 147-161 peptide. The cytotoxicity assay was carried out by incubating  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ -  
 25 labeled target cells and NP-specific CTL at 10:1 E/T ratio for 4 hours.

The data in Table 3 (panel A) show that the CTL clone is able to kill PR8 and X31 influenza virus infected P815 cells (H-2<sup>d</sup>) as well as P815 cells coated with NP 147-161 peptide. No significant killing was seen with P815 cells coated with irrelevant NP 365-379 peptide (IASNENMDAMESSTS) (SEQ ID NO:27) known to be recognized in association with H-2D<sup>b</sup> by C57BL/6 CTL. Panel B shows the ability of NP specific CTL to kill

-50-

SP2/0 cells, transfected with the 91A3 heavy chain gene carrying the NP 147-161 sequence (SP2/0-91A3H-NP147-161). The CTLs also killed cells cotransfected with 91A3H-NP147-161 and wild-type 91A3 light chain gene (91A3HL-NP147-161). The CTLs were not able to lyse SP2/0 transfected with wild-type, 91A3H, 91A3L or 91A3HL genes. However, SP2/0 transfected with wild type H and L gene (91A3HL) and coated with NP147-161 were killed by the CTLs.

10

TABLE 3

Killing of SP2/0 cells transfected with plasmid carrying the  $V_H$ -NP chimeric gene ( $V_{HC}$ ), by NP-specific CTL

| 15 | Target Cells                         | % Specific<br>(1) | $^{51}\text{Cr}$ release<br>(2) |
|----|--------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
|    | A P815                               | 14                | 12                              |
|    | P815 coated with NP147-161           | 77                | 49                              |
|    | P815 coated with NP365-379           | 14                | 10                              |
| 20 | P815 infected with PR8               | 59                | 51                              |
|    | P815 infected with X31               | 77                | 64                              |
|    | P815 infected with B Lee             | 19                | 9                               |
|    | B SP2/0                              | ND*               | 2                               |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3L                        | 9                 | ND                              |
| 25 | SP2/0 / 91A3HL coated with NP147-161 | 30                | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3HL coated with NP365-379 | 7                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3H                        | 2                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3HL                       | 4                 | ND                              |
|    | SP2/0 / 91A3H-NP147-161              | 44                | 39                              |
| 30 | SP2/0 / 91A3HL-NP147-161             | 28                | 21                              |

\* ND = not done

These results clearly show that cells transfected with chimeric immunoglobulin genes bearing an epitope of influenza virus recognized by CTL are

-51-

killed by CTL as are influenza infected cells or cells artificially (in vitro) coated with peptide.

In further experiments we found that SP2/0 cells or even BALB/c spleen cells that were pulsed with soluble 91A3HL-NP147-161 (also designated Ig-NP) and labelled with <sup>151</sup>Cr were not killed by the specific CTL. This is in agreement with the general observation that only proteins synthesized by the target cells themselves are presented by MHC class I molecules and recognized by CTLs. This is because they are processed in a compartment that allows the peptides to be transported to the endoplasmic reticulum where they bind MHC class I antigen. Soluble Ig-NP is processed in the endosomal compartment and therefore the NP147-161 generated from it will not be able to encounter MHC class I antigen.

8. Example: Induction Of Antibodies To HIV 1 By  
Immunization Of Baboons With  
Chimeric Immunoglobulin Molecules

8.1. Preparation Of Chimeric Immunoglobulin

5 Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) mutagenesis  
as described in Zaghoulani, H. et al., J. Immunol., 148,  
3604-3609 and Zaghoulani et al., 1993, Science, 259,  
224-227 was used to create V<sub>H</sub> genes encoding HIV-1  
sequences described in Example 6 (a) and (d) above.

10 These chimeric V<sub>H</sub> genes as well as the wild  
type 91A3 V<sub>H</sub> gene were subcloned into the EcoRI site  
upstream of the exons encoding a human  $\gamma$ 1 constant  
region within the plasmid pSV2 $\Delta$ HgptDNSV<sub>H</sub>-hC $\gamma$ 1 as  
described in Dange, J.C. et al. EMBO J. 7, 1994-1988  
15 (1988) from which the EcoRI dansyl (DNS) V<sub>H</sub> gene was  
cut out. Thus, three constructs were generated:  
pSV2 $\Delta$ Hgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC $\gamma$ 1 carries nucleotide sequences  
encoding the consensus V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (Example 1(a)) in  
place of the D segment; pSV2 $\Delta$ Hgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC $\gamma$ 1,  
20 carries nucleotide sequences encoding the V<sub>3</sub>M peptide  
(Example 1(d)) instead of the D segment; and  
pSV2 $\Delta$ Hgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-D-hC $\gamma$ 1, carries nucleotide sequences  
encoding the natural D segment. In each plasmid, the  
nucleotide sequences encoding the HIV peptide and  
25 surrounding regions were determined and confirm their  
insertion in the correct frame.

Expression of these [murine 91A3V<sub>H</sub>]-[human  $\gamma$ 1  
constant region] heavy chain genes with a [murine  
91A3V<sub>L</sub>]-[human K constant region] light chain was  
30 accomplished as follows: The 8 kb BamHI fragment  
encoding the entire 91A3 light chain gene as described  
in Sanz et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84, 1085-  
1989 (1987) was subcloned into the BamHI site of pUC19  
plasmid. Subsequently, a Hind III fragment  
35 encompassing the light chain promoter and the variable  
region coding sequences was cut out from this plasmid

-53-

and subcloned into the Hind III site of pSV184ΔHneoDNSV<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> (upstream of the gene encoding a human kappa constant region) from which the dansyl V<sub>K</sub> (DNSV<sub>K</sub>) was excised as described in Oi, V.T. & Morrison, S.C., Bio Techniques, 4 214-221 (1986). This plasmid which will encode a murine 91A3 V<sub>K</sub>-human C<sub>K</sub> light chain is designated pSV184ΔHneo91A3<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub>. Gene cloning, plasmid purification, hybridization, and DNA fragment separation and elution from agarose gels were carried as described in Zaghoulani et al., J. Immunol., 148, 3604-3609 (1992). Nucleotide sequencing was carried out by the dideoxy method using a Sequenase kit available from U.S. Biochem according to the manufacture's instructions. The plasmids pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC<sub>Y</sub>1, pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC<sub>Y</sub>1, pSV2ΔHgpt91A3V<sub>H</sub>-D-hC<sub>Y</sub>1, were separately cotransfected with pSV184ΔHneo91A3V<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> into the non-Ig secreting murine myeloma B cell line, SP2/0, by electroporation (220 volts, 960 μFarads) as described in Zaghoulani et al., J. Immunol., 148, 3604-3609 (1992) and Zaghoulani et al., Science, 259, 224-227 (1993). Transfectants expressing both heavy and light chains were doubly selected using mycophenolic acid and geneticin as described in Zaghoulani et al., 1992, J. Immunol. 148:3604-3609.

## 8.2. Results

### Immunochemical properties of Ig-peptide chimeras.

Plasmids pSV2ΔH-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-hC<sub>Y</sub>1, pSV2ΔII-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>C-hC<sub>Y</sub>1, and pSV2ΔII-gpt-91A3V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>3</sub>M-hC<sub>Y</sub>1 were separately co-transfected with pSV184ΔH-neo-91A3V<sub>K</sub>-hC<sub>K</sub> into the non-Ig secreting murine myeloma B cell line, SP2/0, and Ig producing transfectants were doubly selected using G418 and mycophenolic acid. As indicated in Figure 7, three different Ig molecules

were generated in which the heavy and light chain variable regions are of the murine 91A3 anti-arsonate antibody while the constant regions are derived from human  $\gamma 1$  and kappa chains. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C carries V<sub>3</sub>C peptide in place of the D segment within the CDR3 loop of the V<sub>H</sub> gene, and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M carries V<sub>3</sub>M peptide in place of the D segment. Ig-W is a control molecule encoded by unmodified genes, and therefore carries the parental D segment. These Igs were affinity purified on anti-human kappa mAb column and assayed for chain assembly and HIV peptide expression. When Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M and Ig-W are captured by an anti-human kappa mAb, they bind <sup>125</sup>I-goat anti-human Fc $\gamma$ 1 antibodies to the same extent indicating that the replacement of the D segment with V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M preserved the Ig structure without affecting chain assembly or the overall folding of the molecule (Figure 7a). The control molecule Ig-HA which is entirely murine Ig did not bind to anti-human antibodies. Furthermore, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M but not Ig-W or Ig-HA bind rabbit antibodies specific for either V<sub>3</sub>C (Figure 7b) or V<sub>3</sub>M (Figure 7c) peptides. These results indicate that V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M peptides borne by Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, respectively, are exposed and preserved their antigenicity when expressed in the CDR3 loop of Ig.

**Induction of HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies in baboons immunized with chimeric Igs.** Groups of baboons were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M, or control Ig-W and serum samples collected before and after immunization were tested for the presence of antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C and V<sub>3</sub>M peptides and to a negative control peptide, 519-535 corresponding to the conserved amino acid residues 519-535 of HIV-1 111B isolate. The results of representative baboons are illustrated in Figure 8. Baboons that were immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M produced antibodies to the gp120 V<sub>3</sub> loop



derived peptides while those immunized with Ig-W did not. These antibodies are specific for  $V_3$  peptides and did not bind 519-535 peptide. While Ig- $V_3$ M induced antibodies that react only with  $V_3$ M peptide, Ig- $V_3$ C induced cross-reactive antibodies that bind to both  $V_3$ M and  $V_3$ C peptides. A significant level of antibodies was detectable at day 65 (14 days after the third immunization). However, higher antibody levels were obtained at day 164 (14 days after the fifth immunization). While antibodies from rabbits immunized with  $V_3$ C-KLH or  $V_3$ M-KLH conjugates react with both  $V_3$ C and  $V_3$ M peptides, the antibodies from the baboon immunized with Ig- $V_3$ M react only with  $V_3$ M peptide. This may be related to individual variation in the response, to a different folding of  $V_3$ M peptide in Ig- $V_3$ M versus in  $V_3$ M-KLH conjugate and/or to a weaker response of the baboon probably due to poorer T cell help.

In further experiments we investigated whether these serum antibodies from baboons immunized with Ig- $V_3$  chimeras could bind native HIV-1 gp120 envelope protein. The results depicted in Figure 9, indicate that serum from baboons immunized with either Ig- $V_3$ C, or Ig- $V_3$ M bind a 120 kd protein when incubated with MN virus lysates as does the control human serum from HIV-1 infected individual. A rabbit anti-serum raised against peptide 503-535 binds to the envelope protein of both MN and IIIB isolates, while the baboon serum did not bind to gp 120 of IIIB isolate. No binding to either MN or IIIB proteins is obtained when the lysates are incubated with serum from a baboon immunized with Ig-W. These results indicate that immunization of baboons with Ig- $V_3$ C and Ig- $V_3$ M induces antibodies that bind native envelope protein of HIV-1.

To investigate the effect that baboon anti-serum could have on HIV-1 virus infection of susceptible cell lines we carried out in vitro

-56-

neutralization assays using MN and IIIB isolates as infectious material and Sup T1 as target cells. As can be seen in Figure 10, anti-serum (bleed day 164, 14 day after the fifth immunization) from baboons immunized with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>M neutralize HIV-1 MN but not IIIB isolate, while anti-serum from a baboon immunized with Ig-W failed to neutralize any of the two isolates. Significant HIV-1 MN neutralizing activity was detected in samples collected at days 101 (36 days after the third immunization), 136 (14 days after the fourth immunization, and 164 (14 days after the fifth immunization). The dose effect relationship between neutralization and serum dilution indicates that neutralization is dependent of the amount of serum antibodies.

In vitro production of antibodies specific for HIV-1 derived peptides by human lymphocytes stimulated with Ig-peptide chimeras. Since Ig-peptide chimeras carrying HIV-1 envelope derived epitopes were able to induce HIV-1 neutralizing antibodies in baboons, we carried out in vitro experiments to determine whether human lymphocytes could similarly produce anti-HIV-1 antibodies subsequent to in-vitro stimulation with the chimeras. In preliminary experiments we tested serum from 20 HIV-1 infected asymptomatic patients for presence of antibodies that specifically react with V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides. Among these, 9 individuals had antibodies that bound both HIV-1 envelope derived V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides (not shown). Two of these individuals, CE and SLF, and one non-infected, healthy subject control were selected for study. Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) from these individuals were incubated with the Ig-peptide chimeras either coupled or uncoupled to tetanus toxoid (TT) for a period of 7 to 10 days and culture super-

-57-

natants were assayed for presence of antibodies to HIV-1 derived peptides. As indicated in Figure 11, when lymphocytes from patients were incubated with either Ig-V<sub>3</sub>-TT or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>, they produced antibodies that bound to both V<sub>3</sub>M and V<sub>3</sub>C peptides (Figure 11g and H). Incubation with Ig-W did not stimulate the production of antibodies specific for the HIV-1 derived peptides (Figure 11 c and f) indicating a specific stimulation of lymphocytes by the HIV-1 peptide borne by the Ig chimeras. Lymphocytes from the non infected subject (K), did not produce any detectable antibody to the HIV-1 derived peptides indicating that the cells producing the HIV-1 specific antibodies are memory cells that have previously been primed to respond to these epitopes. Optimal antibody production required lower amounts of antigen when the chimeras were coupled to TT suggesting that mobilization of TT specific T cells may have provided help for antibody production.

## 9. Example: Derivatization Of Chimeric Immunoglobulins With PEG

### 9.1. Materials And Methods

**Mice.** Six week old BALB/c mice were purchased from Jackson Laboratory (Bar Harbor, ME).

**Antigens.** The synthetic peptide HA110-120 (SFERFEIFPKE) (SEQ ID NO:7) corresponds to amino acid residues 110-120 of HA of PR8 influenza A virus (Zaghouani et al., 1993, Science 259:224), NP 147-161 (TYQRTALVVRTGMDP) (SEQ ID NO:15) corresponds to residues 147-161 of NP of PR8 influenza A virus (Zaghouani et al., 1992, J.Immunol., 148: 3604.) and V<sub>3</sub>C peptide (RKSIHIGPGRAFYTTGEII) (SEQ ID NO:1) corresponds to a consensus sequence predicted from the comparison of the V<sub>3</sub> cysteine bridged loop sequences of gp120 envelope proteins of 245 HIV-1 isolates (see above). Peptides were synthesized and RP-HPLC purified

at IAF Biochem (Laval, Quebec, Canada). KLH and BSA conjugates of the synthetic peptides were prepared using standard techniques.

5 Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were genetically engineered in our laboratory as described above. Ig-HA is a BALB/c IgG2b expressing in the CDR3 loop a T cell epitope (HA110-120) from the HA of PR8 influenza A virus. Ig-NP, is also a BALB/c IgG2b expressing in CDR3 loop the NP147-161 CTL-epitope. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C is a mouse  
10 variable-human  $\gamma 1/k$  constant regions expressing within the heavy chain CDR3 loop a B cell epitope from the V<sub>3</sub> cysteine bridged loop of the envelope protein of HIV-1. Ig-W, is the wild type mouse V<sub>H</sub> and V<sub>L</sub> variable-human  $\gamma 1/k$  constant regions used as a control for Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C.  
15 Ig-HA and Ig-NP, were affinity purified from culture supernatant on a rat anti-mouse k chain-sepharose column. Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C and Ig-W were affinity purified on a mouse anti-human k chain antibody (HP605)-sepharose column.

20 PR8 influenza A virus was prepared from allantoic fluid of embryonated eggs on a sucrose gradient. An UV inactivated PR8 virus was used in these experiments.

#### Derivatization of chimeric Ig with mPEG.

25 Ig-HA, Ig-NP, and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (see above) were derivatized with 2,4,6-trichloro-s-triazine activated mPEG 5,000 (Sigma) and purified to homogeneity. Briefly, a 50 times molar excess of mPEG was added to 10 mg of chimeric Ig in 10 ml of 0.1M tetraborate  
30 buffer, pH 9.6. The mixture was stirred vigorously for four hours at room temperature and the preparations were concentrated to 1.5 ml in CENTREX UF-2 ultraconcentrators of 100,000 MWCO (Schleicher & Schuell). The residual unreacted mPEG was removed by  
35 size exclusion chromatography on ACA44 Ultrogel column and homogeneous populations of Ig-mPEG with 6-8%

derivatized lysines were isolated by anion exchange HPLC on Q300 column (for details of procedure, see Example Section 10, below). The degree of mPEG derivatization was estimated by fluorescamine assay as described (Cunningham-Rundles et al., 1992, J.Immunol.Methods 152: 177). Briefly, graded amounts (0.25, 0.5 and 1 $\mu$ g) of Ig-HA-mPEG, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG conjugates and native Ig-HA or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C, were dissolved in 25  $\mu$ l of PBS and mixed with an equal volume of fresh fluorescamine in acetone (150 g/ml). Samples were incubated for 5 min at room temperature and then adjusted to 1 ml with PBS. The absorbance was then measured at 475 nm emission versus 390 nm excitation and the percent of pegylated lysines was estimated according to the following formula  $I-(OD_{475} \text{ Ig-mPEG} / OD_{475} \text{ native Ig}) \times 100$ . The homogeneity of the conjugates was confirmed by SDS-PAGE and agarose electrophoresis.

**Blood circulation.** Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG preparations (100 $\mu$ g in 100 $\mu$ l of PBS) were radiolabeled with <sup>125</sup>I using the chloramine method and the free iodine was then removed by gel filtration on PD10 columns (Pharmacia). Groups of three BALB/c mice were injected i.v. with 200 $\mu$ l of PBS containing  $20 \times 10^6$  cpm (4 $\mu$ g) of <sup>125</sup>I-labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. Fifteen minutes later (time required for uniform distribution of labeled Ig) the mice were bled and the radioactivity in 20 $\mu$ l of serum was counted. Total radioactivity per mouse was estimated on the basis that 7.3% of body weight is blood and 55% of the blood volume is serum (Klibanov et al., 1991, Biochim.Biophys.Acta 1062: 142). The radioactivity estimated at 15 min was considered as the total radioactivity injected. To investigate the clearance of Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG, mice were bled 3, 6, 24, 48, 72, and 168 hours after injection. Blood clearance rates were

expressed for each group as percentage of residual radioactivity at various intervals of time.

Organ distribution. To study the tissue distribution of the native Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates, two groups of seven mice each (15-17g weight) were injected i.v. with 200 $\mu$ l PBS containing  $20 \times 10^6$  cpm of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG. Mice were bled after 15 min and the blood radioactivity was estimated as above. Fragments of liver, spleen, lung and kidney were then resected by 3, 6, 24, 48, 72, and 168 hours after inoculation and the radioactivity was measured in a  $\gamma$  counter. Tissue distribution was expressed as index of distribution (%ID) of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -Ig-HA or  $^{125}\text{I}$ -Ig-HA-mPEG. ID represents the percentage of radioactivity per gram of wet organ versus the radioactivity measured in blood at 15 min after injection (Kitamura et al., 1990, Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.: 1387).

Western blot analysis. To investigate in vivo proteolysis of the native and pegylated Ig-HA, blood samples from mice injected with  $^{125}\text{I}$ -Ig-HA or  $^{125}\text{I}$ -Ig-HA-mPEG as for the clearance studies, were analyzed by SDS-PAGE under non reducing conditions. Briefly, serum samples (5 $\mu$ l) collected at various intervals of time were electrophoresed on 8 to 17% polyacrylamide gradient gels (ExcelGels, Pharmacia) for 2 hours, at 150 volts and 40°C using a Multiphore II system (Pharmacia). Separated proteins were electrotransferred from the gel onto PVDF membranes (0.22 $\mu$ , Millipore, Waters Co.) for 30 minutes at 450 mAmps. Membranes were dried and exposed to Kodak X-OMAT films overnight at -70°C.

In vitro T cell proliferation assay. 2PK3 B lymphoma cells (H-2d) were used as APCs. Irradiated (2,200 rads) APCs ( $10^4$ ) were incubated for 48 hours in round bottom 96-well plates with graded amounts of Ig-

HA, Ig-HAMPEG or Ig-NP-mPEG, and  $2 \times 10^4$  of HA110-120 specific T hybridoma cells LD1-24 (Haberman et al., J. Immunol. 145:3087). Supernatants were then harvested and IL-3 production as a measure of T cell proliferation was determined using  $1.5 \times 10^4$  of IL-3 dependent DA- I cells and the calorimetric MTT assay (Zaghouani et al., Science 259:224, Mosmann, 1983, J. Immunol. Methods 65: 55).

**In vivo T cell proliferation assay.** The proliferative response of lymph node cells from BABL/c mice immunized with IG-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG were assessed for [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-thymidine incorporation. Four groups of seven mice each were immunized subcutaneously at the base of the tail and in the foot pads with  $100\mu\text{g}$  of Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG emulsified in either  $200\mu\text{l}$  of PBS or  $200\mu\text{l}$  of PBS/CFA (1:1 v/v). Ten days later, the draining lymph nodes were collected and the cells were cultured in flat bottom 96-well microtiter plates ( $2 \times 10^5$  cells per well) with 0.5, 1, 5, and  $10\mu\text{g/ml}$  of HA110-120, NP147-161, Ig-HA, Ig-NP, UV-inactivated PR8 virus, ConA ( $1\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) or no antigen. Cultures were set up in quadruplets from pooled lymph node cells, incubated under standard conditions for 5 days (or 3 days in the case of ConA), and pulsed for the last 18 hours with  $1\mu\text{Ci}$  of [ $^3\text{H}$ ]-thymidine per well. The cells were then harvested and the radioactivity was measured in a  $\beta$  scintillation counter. The mean of cpm obtained in the absence of antigen was subtracted from the mean of cpm obtained in the presence of antigens.

**Radioimmunoassay.** Detection of the anti- $\text{V}_3\text{C}$  peptide antibodies in mice sera was carried out by radioimmunoassay as follows: microtiter plates were coated with  $50\mu\text{l}$  of PBS containing  $5\mu\text{g/ml}$  of  $\text{V}_3\text{C}$  peptide coupled to BSA ( $\text{V}_3\text{C}$ -BSA), BSA, or NP147-161-BSA for 18 hours at  $40^\circ\text{C}$ . The plates were extensively washed with PBS and then blocked with 3% BSA in PBS at

room temperature. After 4 hours the plates were washed with PBS and serial serum dilutions (50 $\mu$ l) in 1% BSA-PBS were added. The plates were incubated for 2 hours at 37°C. After washing with PBS-0.05% Tween 20, bound  
5 antibodies were revealed by incubating the plates for 2 hours at room temperature with 5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cpm of <sup>125</sup>I-rat anti-mouse k chain mAb. Plates were then washed and bound radioactivity was measured in a  $\gamma$  counter. The amount of anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies in mice sera was  
10 estimated by extrapolation on a standard curve constructed with affinity purified mouse polygonal anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies. These polyclonal anti-V<sub>3</sub>C antibodies were obtained from BALB/c mice immunized with V<sub>3</sub>C-KLH conjugate (100  $\mu$ g) in CFA and then boosted  
15 weekly, three times with V<sub>3</sub>C-KLH conjugate (50 $\mu$ g) in incomplete Freund adjuvant (IFA). The antibodies were affinity purified on a V<sub>3</sub>C-BSA-sepharose column.

Detection of anti-human isotypic antibodies in mice sera was carried out by radioimmunoassay as  
20 follows: microtiter plates were coated with 50 $\mu$ l of PBS containing 2 $\mu$ g/ml of Ig-W for 18 hours at 40°C. The plates were then treated as above. The amount of mouse anti-human Ig antibodies was estimated by extrapolation on a standard curve constructed with a stoichiometric  
25 mixture of mouse anti-human  $\gamma$ 1 mAb (Zymed Laboratory) and HP6053 mouse anti-human kappa mAb (ATCC).

## 9.2. RESULTS

### Preparation of homogeneous populations of pegylated Ig chimeras.

30 Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were mildly pegylated and homogeneous conjugates with 6-8% mPEG substitution of the lysine residues were purified as described in Section 10, below. The conjugate preparations were rendered free of residual adducts such as free  
35 hydrolyzed mPEG and highly conjugated or unconjugated Ig by size exclusion chromatography performed on ACA44



-63-

5     Ultragel column followed by anion-exchange HPLC on Q300 column. Homogeneous populations of Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG conjugates with 6-8% mPEG substituted lysine residues as determined by fluorescamine assay, were used for further investigations.

**Blood clearance and tissue distribution of native and pegylated Ig chimeras.**

10     *Clearance rates.* The clearance rates of Ig-HA-mPEG from blood circulation were analyzed in parallel to those of the native Ig-HA. <sup>125</sup>I-labeled Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-HA were injected i.v. into BALB/c mice and the radioactivity was measured in blood samples collected at various intervals of time. As depicted in Figure 12, the native Ig-HA was cleared at 48 hours  
15     after injection while Ig-HA-mPEG persisted in peripheral blood up to 7 days. Ig-HA-mPEG showed a two phase clearance characterized by an initial rapid decline followed by a much slower decline.

20     *Resistance to in vivo proteolysis.* Serum samples from mice injected with <sup>125</sup>I-labeled native Ig-HA or Ig-HA-mPEG were collected at various intervals of time and analyzed by Western blot analysis. Both native and pegylated Ig-HA showed important degradation between 6 and 24 hours after injection. By 48 hours,  
25     the majority of the proteolytic products were cleared from the blood, and by 72 hours intact Ig molecules were detected only in samples from mice injected with Ig-HA-mPEG (Figure 13).

30     *Tissue distribution.* We carried out kinetic studies to estimate the amount of radioactivity in various tissues at various intervals of time after injection of the radiolabeled conjugates. The tissue distribution of <sup>125</sup>I-Ig-HA and <sup>125</sup>I-Ig-HA-mPEG was studied in liver, spleen, lung and kidney resected at  
35     0.25, 3, 6, 24, 48, 72 and 168 hours after injection.

As illustrated in Figure 14, both Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG are taken up by the various organs to the same extent but the amounts of Ig-HA-mPEG retained in the organs were higher than those of native Ig-HA. It should be noted that in lungs, while Ig-HA-mPEG was still present by 168 hours, the native Ig-HA was cleared by 72 hours. Overall, these results indicate that pegylated Ig-HA molecules persist longer than the native Ig-HA in the blood, and higher amounts of the pegylated Ig-HA were retained in organs with lymphoid tissues.

**The cellular immune response to HA110-120 peptide expressed by pegylated Ig-HA chimera.**

*In vitro* activation of HA110-120 specific T cell hybridoma. To assess the effect of mPEG derivatization on the immunogenicity of Ig-HA, we studied *in vitro* T cell activation by native Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG. This was carried out using HA110-120 specific T hybridoma cells, LD1-24 and measurement of IL-3 release by these cells subsequent to activation by the various antigens. Figure 15 shows that Ig-HA-mPEG activates the specific T cells to the same extent as native Ig-HA. This indicates that mPEG derivatization of the chimeric Ig did not affect the delivery and subsequent presentation of the HA100-120 peptide to the T cells. No activation was observed with pegylated Ig-NP, a molecule carrying a CTL epitope from NP of PR8 influenza A virus instead of the HA110-120 helper epitope.

*In vivo* priming of HA110-120 specific T cells. In a previous work, we showed that immunization of BALB/c mice with Ig-HA in CFA primed animals to mount a specific proliferative response (Zaghouani, et al., 1993, Science 259:224). In this study, we compared the immunogenicity of native and pegylated Ig-HA administered in either saline or CFA (Figure 16). Lymph node cells from BALB/c mice were harvested ten

-65-

days after immunization and stimulated in vitro for 5 days with various antigens. Immunization with native Ig-HA in CFA primed T cells for in vitro proliferative response upon incubation with Ig-HA, UV-inactivated PR8 virus and HA110-120 peptide but not Ig-NP or NP 147-161 peptide (Figure 16b). Similar responses were obtained when the mice were primed with Ig-HA-mPEG in CFA (Figure 16d).

More striking, a strong and specific proliferative response was obtained when the mice were primed with Ig-HA-mPEG in saline (Figure 16c). No response was detected when the mice were immunized with native Ig-HA in saline (Figure 16a). This strongly suggest that the requirement for adjuvant was obviated when Ig-HA was derivatized with mPEG 5,000.

**Effect Of Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C derivatization with mPEG on the antibody response to V<sub>3</sub>C peptide and to Ig-xenogeneic determinants**

The kinetics of antibody response elicited by native and pegylated Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C was studied in BALB/c mice following different immunization schedules (see the legend for Figure 17). As mentioned above, Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C is a chimeric molecule made up of murine V<sub>H</sub> gene expressing the consensus V<sub>3</sub>C peptide, murine V<sub>K</sub> gene and human  $\gamma$ 1 and  $\kappa$  constant region genes. Therefore, we measured by RIA the antibody response against the V<sub>3</sub>C epitope as well as against isotypic determinants of human constant regions.

The study showed a sharp increase of the antibodies to V<sub>3</sub>C peptide after immunization with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in CFA followed by a boost in IFA (Figure 17a). More importantly, immunization of animals with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in saline induced a V<sub>3</sub>C specific antibody response (Figures 17b, 17c, and 17d). This response was slightly higher in animals immunized with

Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG. The antibody response was stronger when the animals were immunized 3 times in saline (Figure 17b versus Figures 17c and 17d).

5 The animals immunized with native chimeric Ig in CFA showed high antibody response to isotypic determinants of human constant regions (Figure 17e). However, while immunization in saline with native Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C also induced a strong anti-human antibody response, immunization with Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG in saline elicited no  
10 significant response (Figures 17f, 17g and 17h).

#### 10. EXAMPLE: PURIFICATION OF PEGYLATED IMMUNOGLOBULIN

During pegylation of a protein, various degrees of derivatization may occur as a consequence of the micro heterogeneity of the protein, the  
15 distribution of both the number and the position of attachment of PEG units, the inherent polydiversity of PEG polymers, and microenvironmental conditions of the reaction. In addition, dioxy PEG that can crosslink proteins may be present in commercial preparations as a  
20 result of hydrolysis of the ethylene oxide monomers during the polymerization process (Selisko et al., 1993, J. Chromatogr. 641: 71-79; Harris et al., 1985, in "Partitioning in Aqueous Two-Phase Systems", D.E. Brooks and D. Fisher (Editors), Academic Press,  
25 Orlando, Fl., p.593). Thus, protein-mPEG preparations may contain species of highly pegylated and/or crosslinked proteins in addition to the residual adducts. Purification of homogeneous populations of conjugates is therefore required prior to their use in  
30 biological systems. Purification of protein-PEG conjugates has generally consisted of a single step chromatographic removal of free PEG polymers (Kitamura, et al., 1991 Cancer Res., 51: 4310-43115; Cunningham-R.A. et al., 1992, J. Immunol. Methods, 152: 177-190;  
35 Snider et al., 1992, J. Chromatogr. 599: 141-155;

Jackson, et al., 1987, Anal-Biochem. 165:114-127).  
Herein, we describe a two step procedure able to remove  
completely the residual adducts and to isolate  
homogeneous populations of mPEG derivatized  
5 immunoglobulins.

#### 10.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

##### CHEMICALS

AIgs (Ig-HA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C) were generated in our  
laboratory as described above. PhastSystem electro-  
10 phoresis apparatus, PhastGels 4-15% gradient of poly-  
acrylamide and cyanogen bromide activated Sepharose CL-  
4B were purchased from Pharmacia, LKB. Aca44 Ultrogel  
and dialysis bags of 75,000 MWCO were from Spectrum,  
Co. Ultra concentrators of 100,000 MWCO (CENTREX UF-2,  
15 2ml volume) were from Schleicher & Schuell. Rat  
hybridoma cells secreting monoclonal anti-murine k  
chain antibodies and HP6053 mouse hybridoma producing  
anti-human k chain antibodies were from ATCC. The Q300  
HPLC column (250 x 4.6 mm, 300 micron particle size)  
20 was from Rainin. Nessler reagent and 2,4,6-trichloro-  
s-triazine activated monomethoxypolyethylene glycol MW  
5,000 (mPEG 5,000) were from Sigma. The agarose gels  
(Titan Gel High-Resolution Protein kit) were from  
Helena Laboratories.

25

##### EXPERIMENTAL

Purification of AIgs. IgHA and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C were  
affinity purified on a rat anti-murine k chain and  
mouse anti-human k chain antibody-Sepharose columns,  
respectively. Affinity purified AIgs were equilibrated  
30 in 0.1M sodium tetraborate, pH 9.6 and concentrated to  
1 mg/ml by ultracentrifugation using tubes of 100,000  
MWCO.

**Derivatization of AIGs with mPEG.** 10 mg of each AIG were derivatized with 2,4,6-trichloro-s-triazine activated mPEG 5,000 as described in Jackson, et al., 1987, Anal-Biochem. 165:114-127. Briefly, a 50  
5 times molar excess of mPEG was added to 10 mg AIGs in 10 ml of 0.1M tetraborate buffer, pH 9.6. The mixture was stirred vigorously for four hours at room temperature. The conjugate preparations were concentrated to 1.5 ml in tubes of 100,000 MWCO and  
10 further purified.

**Chromatographic purification of AIG-mPEG conjugates.** AIG-mPEG preparations were applied on ACA44 Ultrogel filtration column (80 x 1.6cm) equilibrated with 0.1M  $\text{NH}_4\text{HCO}_3$ , pH 8.5 and flow rate of  
15 0.4 ml/min. Fractions were collected at 4 min interval, dried by speed vacuum centrifugation and resuspended in 0.5 ml of 5mM sodium-acetate, pH 5. Each fraction was then analyzed for protein content by Biuret micro assay, and for the presence of free  
20 hydrolyzed mPEG by Nessler's reagent as described (Wilkinson et al., 1987, Immunol.Lett. 15: 17-22). Fractions of the conjugates free of hydrolyzed mPEG were then rechromatographed on a Q300 anion-exchange HPLC column equilibrated with 5 mM sodium acetate, pH 5  
25 using a 45 minutes linear gradient from 5 to 500 mM sodium acetate, pH 5, and flow rate of 0.5 ml/min. Fractions from Q300 column were dialyzed in Spectrapor bags with 75,000 MWCO against PBS and concentrated in CENTREX UF-2 tubes.

30 **Electrophoretic analyses of AIG-mPEG conjugates.** Homogeneity of AIG-mPEG conjugate was analyzed by SDS-PAGE and residual mPEG was detected by

electrophoresis on agarose gels. The SDS-PAGE was performed in non reducing conditions as described by Laemmli (Laemmli, 1970, Nature (London), 227: 680-685). Briefly, Samples (5  $\mu$ g) were resuspended in 5  $\mu$ l of sample buffer (0.1% SDS, 0.1M Tris-HCl 6M urea, pH 8.5) and incubated at 37°C for 2 hours. Samples were run on 4-15% gradient PhastGel (Pharmacia) at 250 Volts and 5 Watts for 45 minutes at 15°C. The gel was then fixed and silver stained. Electrophoresis on agarose Titan gels was carried out according to the manufacture's instructions. Samples (10  $\mu$ g in 5  $\mu$ l barbital buffer) were run at 250 Volts for 30 minutes on duplicate gels. One gel was stained with a mixture of 0.1% Coomassie Blue R-250 and 1% Ponceau S, and the second gel was immersed in 20% trichloroacetic acid (TCA) in water for 30 seconds and immediately photo-scanned.

**Fluorescamine assay.** Graded amounts (1, 0.5 and 0.25  $\mu$ g) of AIG-mPEG or AIGs in 25  $\mu$ l of PBS were mixed with equal volume of fresh fluorescamine in acetone (150 g/ml) and incubated for 5 min at room temperature. Samples were then brought to 1 ml with PBS and absorbency was measured at 475 nm emission versus 390 nm excitation. The percent of pegylated primary amines was estimated according to the following formula  $1 - (OD_{475} \text{ AIGs-mPEG} / OD_{475} \text{ AIGs}) \times 100$  (Neville, et al., 1991, presented at the American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists', Sixth Annual Meeting, Washington, DC, Nov. 17-21, 1991). The improved resolution obtained with ammonium bicarbonate may be related to better neutralization of the active charges on gel matrix and therefore lower interactions between free mPEG polymer and the matrix.

**Removal of other residual adducts from the AIG-mPEG conjugates.** Because no one step procedure for the separation of protein-mPEG conjugates from residual adducts is described, we chose a method that includes a

first step removal of hydrolyzed mPEG and a subsequent step that removes other residual adducts such as underivatized or highly derivatized AIGs. Since the size exclusion limit of the Aca44 Ultrogel column is 140 kD, hydrolyzed mPEG can be removed but the other residual adducts can not. The removal of excess PEG is required because it could interfere with the isolation of the conjugates from the other residual adducts in the subsequent anion exchange chromatography step.

10 Preliminary experiments performed on anion-exchange HPLC columns as a single step of purification, showed poor resolution and low yields even if minimal amounts of sample were applied on the column. In fact, the conjugates showed a broad elution profile as a result

15 of the presence of excess of free polymers which interfere strongly with the binding of conjugates to the anion-exchange matrix. Poor resolution of pegylated proteins was also described when conjugates were separated by charge-reversal capillary zone

20 electrophoresis without previous removal of free PEG (Snider et al., 1992, J. Chromatogr. 599: 141-155; McGoff, et al., 1988, Chem.Pharm.Bull. 36: 3079). It may be important to remove free polymer from the conjugate preparation in order to obtain good

25 resolution in different separating media.

To select homogeneous population of conjugates with 6-8% degree of pegylation, we rechromatographed the conjugates on anion-exchange HPLC column with optimized conditions as described in the experimental section. Figure 18 shows the elution

30 profiles of Ig-HA-mPEG (Figure 18A) and free Ig-HA (Figure 18B). In the case of Ig-HA-mPEG, 3 major peaks were eluted from the column and labeled 1, 2, and 3 (Figure 18A). Peak 3 represents free Ig-HA since it

35 elutes at the same salt concentration as the unconjugated control Ig-HA. The material of peak 1 may



-71-

represent highly pegylated AIGs that could not bind to the matrix. Peak 2 seems to contain mildly pegylated Ig-HA as revealed by SDS-PAGE analysis (see below).

**Analysis of the homogeneity of AIG-mPEG**

5 conjugates. The purity of AIGs-mPEG preparations was further analyzed for the presence of traces of free mPEG and residual adducts performed on agarose and polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, respectively. Although purification of AIGs-mPEG conjugates followed one step purification by size exclusion chromatography, 10 small amounts of free mPEG that could not be detected by Nessler's test may be present in the conjugate preparations. To trace small amounts of free PEG that could interfere with the immunogenicity of the AIGs-mPEG we developed an original, sensitive electro- 15 phoretic technique able to detect  $\mu\text{M}$  of free mPEG. Based on the observation that mPEG migrate on agarose to the cathode and can be visualized by TCA precipitation but not by protein dyes, we attempted to trace free mPEG in our preparation by electrophoresis 20 on Titan gel HRT kit followed by TCA precipitation. As can be seen in Figure 19, left panel, Ig-HA-mPEG preparation obtained from the second chromatographic purification (lane 1) like unpegylated Ig-HA preparation (lane 2), did not show detectable amounts 25 of free hydrolyzed mPEG while the preparation collected from the first chromatographic purification contained residual free PEG (lane 4). The amount of free residual mPEG, if any, in the final Ig-HA-mPEG preparation (lane 1) should be lower than  $4 \times 10^{-4} \text{ M}$ . 30 Calibration experiments indicated that as little as  $4 \times 10^{-4} \text{ M}$  of mPEG 5,000 can be detected using this technique (lane 3).

When a duplicate gel was stained with Coomassie/Ponceau (Fig. 19, right panel), only Ig-HA and Ig-HA-mPEG conjugates were revealed (lanes 1, 2, 35

respectively) but not free hydrolyzed mPEG (lane 3). Interestingly, pegylated Ig-HA showed better staining with Ponceau S than unpegylated Ig-HA. The differential staining may be attributed to different ability of the two dyes to access their specific sites on the native protein versus the pegylated one. Using this assay, we also were able to trace free mPEG polymers in preparations of chicken egg ovalbumin-mPEG, BSA-mPEG and bovine gamma globulin-mPEG conjugates.

Although small amounts of PEG polymers can be detected by sensitive techniques such as Childs' assay (Childs, 1975, Microchem. J. 20: 190-192) or Veronese's test (Schiavon, et al., 1990, M. Farmaco., 45(6): 791-795), our electrophoretic technique is able to distinguish free PEG from PEG attached to proteins.

Furthermore we performed SDS-PAGE analysis to investigate the homogeneity of AIGs-mPEG preparations. This was carried out on 4-15% gradient gels (PhastGels, Pharmacia) under non reducing conditions. The results illustrated in Figure 20 show that the final Ig-HA-mPEG and Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C-mPEG preparation (peak 2 in Figure 18) were purified to homogeneity (lanes 2 and 5 respectively). These preparations do not contain detectable amounts of unpegylated AIGs because no comigration with free Ig-HA (lane 1) or Ig-V<sub>3</sub>C (lane 4) was observed. They do not contain highly pegylated AIGs either because no material comigrated with samples representing heavily pegylated AIGs (from peak 1 in Figure 18). In summary, we were able to select homogeneous population of AIG-mPEG with 6-8% degree as indicated by these electrophoretic analyses.

The pegylated Ig-HA, showed a long half life and induced strong T cell activation in mice in vivo.

Various publications are cited herein which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-73-

## SEQUENCE LISTING

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION

(i) APPLICANT: MOUNT SINAI SCHOOL OF MEDICINE OF THE CITY  
UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK

(ii) TITLE OF THE INVENTION: CHIMERIC ANTIBODIES COMPRISING  
ANTIGEN BINDING SITES AND B AND T CELL EPITOPES

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 27

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:

(A) ADDRESSEE: Brumbaugh, Graves, Donohue & Raymond  
(B) STREET: 30 Rockefeller Plaza  
(C) CITY: New York  
(D) STATE: NY  
(E) COUNTRY: USA  
(F) ZIP: 10112-0228

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:

(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Diskette  
(B) COMPUTER: IBM Compatible  
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: DOS  
(D) SOFTWARE: FastSEQ Version 1.5

(vi) CURRENT US APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: 08/441,328  
(B) FILING DATE: 15-MAY-1995  
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER:  
(B) FILING DATE:

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:

(A) NAME: Clark, Richard S  
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 26,154  
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 29889-165/29528

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:

(A) TELEPHONE: 212-408-2558  
(B) TELEFAX: 212-765-2519  
(C) TELEX:

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Human Immunodeficiency Virus Type 1

(iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 301...319  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Envelope Protein gp120

-74-

## (v) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Arg Lys Ser Ile His Ile Gly Pro Gly Arg Ala Phe Tyr Thr Thr Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Glu Ile Ile

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: HA1 hemagglutinin protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

Trp Leu Thr Lys Lys Gly Asp Ser Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: H3 protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

Trp Leu Thr Lys Ser Gly Ser Thr Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

-75-

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION:

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: H2 protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Trp | Leu | Thr | Lys | Glu | Gly | Ser | Asp | Tyr | Pro |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 11 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Measles Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 404...414

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: F protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Ile | Asn | Gln | Asp | Pro | Asp | Lys | Ile | Leu | Thr | Tyr |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Foot and Mouth Disease Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 141...160

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: VP1 protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Met | Asn | Ser | Ala | Pro | Asn | Leu | Arg | Gly | Asp | Leu | Gln | Lys | Val | Ala | Arg |
| 1   |     |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Thr | Leu | Pro |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:7:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 11 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

-76-

- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

- (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

- (iv) FEATURE:  
(A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 110...120  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Hemagglutinin Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:7:

Ser Phe Glu Arg Phe Glu Ile Phe Pro Lys Glu  
1 5 10

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:8:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

- (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
(A) ORGANISM:

- (iv) FEATURE:  
(A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION:  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Tetanus Toxoid Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:8:

Asn Ser Val Asp Asp Ala Leu Ile Asn Ser Thr Lys Ile Tyr Ser Tyr  
1 5 10 15  
Phe Pro Ser Val  
20

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:9:

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
(A) LENGTH: 17 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

- (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
(A) ORGANISM:

- (iv) FEATURE:  
(A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION:  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Tetanus Toxoid

-77-

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:9:

Pro Glu Ile Asn Gly Lys Ala Ile His Leu Val Asn Asn Glu Ser Ser  
 1 5 10 15  
 Glu

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:10:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 88...103
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: Cytochrome C Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:10:

Ala Asn Glu Arg Ala Asp Leu Ile Ala Tyr Leu Gln Ala Thr Lys  
 1 5 10 15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:11:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Mycobacteria

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 350...369
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: Heat Shock Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:11:

Asp Gln Val His Phe Gln Pro Leu Pro Pro Ala Val Val Lys Leu Ser  
 1 5 10 15  
 Asp Ala Leu Ile  
 20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:12:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 14 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

-78-

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Hen

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 48...61

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Egg White Lysozyme

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:12:

Asp Gly Ser Thr Asp Tyr Gly Ile Leu Gln Ile Asn Ser Arg  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:13:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 12 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Streptococcus A

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 308...319

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: M Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:13:

Gln Val Glu Lys Ala Leu Glu Glu Ala Asn Ser Lys  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:14:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 20 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS: single

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Staphylococcus sp.

## (iv) FEATURE:

(A) NAME/KEY:

(B) LOCATION: 81...100

(C) OTHER INFORMATION: Nuclease Protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:14:

Arg Thr Asp Lys Tyr Gly Arg Gly Leu Ala Tyr Ile Tyr Ala Asp Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Lys Met Val Asn  
20

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:15:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:



-79-

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: peptide

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 147...161
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: NP Protein

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:15:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Thr | Tyr | Gln | Arg | Thr | Arg | Ala | Leu | Val | Arg | Thr | Gly | Met | Asp | Pro |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:16:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 30 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: site B of HA

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:16:

CCCCATCCTA GGCAGGAAAA GCCAATTGGT 30

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:17:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: sit B of HA

-80-

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:17:

Trp Leu Thr Glu Asp Glu Gly Ser Tyr Pro  
1                      5                      10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:18:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 18 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

## (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:18:

AGCTGAGGAC AAAGAAGA 18

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:19:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 47 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

## (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:19:

CCGAAAAGGA GGGATCCTAT CCCAAGACCA CACTGACTGT ACACAAA 47

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:20:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 21 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

## (A) ORGANISM:

-81-

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:20:

CAAATCACCC AAGTGATGG C 21

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:21:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 60 base pairs
- (B) TYPE: nucleic acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: cDNA

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

## (A) ORGANISM:

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: primer

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:21:

GGGATAGGAT CCCTCCTTTT CGGTAAACCA TCCAATCCAT TCCAGCCCCT GTCCAGGCCT  
60

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:22:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 24 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

## (A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 12-35
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV-1 HxB2

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:22:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Glu | Leu | Asp | Arg | Trp | Glu | Lys | Ile | Arg | Leu | Arg | Pro | Gly | Gly | Lys | Lys |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Lys | Tyr | Lys | Leu | Lys | His | Ile | Val |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     | 20  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:23:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 25 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid

-82-

- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 325-349  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV reverse transcriptase

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:23:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Ala | Ile | Phe | Gln | Ser | Met | Thr | Lys | Ile | Leu | Glu | Pro | Phe | Arg | Lys |
| 1   |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Gln | Asn | Pro | Asp | Ile | Val | Ile | Tyr | Gln |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|     |     |     | 20  |     |     |     | 25  |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:24:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 19 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 301-319  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV gp 120, WMJ2

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:24:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Arg | Arg | Ser | Leu | Ser | Ile | Gly | Pro | Gly | Arg | Ala | Phe | Arg | Thr | Arg | Glu |
| 1   |     |     |     | 5   |     |     |     | 10  |     |     |     |     |     | 15  |     |
| Ile | Ile | Gly |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:25:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 17 amino acids  
(B) TYPE: amino acid  
(C) STRANDEDNESS: single  
(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: human immunodeficiency virus

(iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:  
(B) LOCATION: 519-535  
(C) OTHER INFORMATION: HIV-1 IIIB

-83-

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:25:

Ala Val Gly Ile Gly Ala Leu Phe Leu Gly Phe Leu Gly Ala Ala Gly  
1 5 10 15  
Ser

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:26:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 10 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza PR8A Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION:
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: site B of HA

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:26:

Trp Leu Thr Glu Lys Glu Gly Ser Tyr Pro  
1 5 10

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:27:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

- (A) LENGTH: 15 amino acids
- (B) TYPE: amino acid
- (C) STRANDEDNESS: single
- (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

- (A) ORGANISM: Influenza Virus

## (iv) FEATURE:

- (A) NAME/KEY:
- (B) LOCATION: 365-379
- (C) OTHER INFORMATION: NP protein

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:27:

Ile Ala Ser Asn Glu Asn Met Asp Ala Met Glu Ser Ser Thr Ser  
1 5 10 15

---

Claims

## WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by recombinant DNA technology comprising a parent immunoglobulin molecule, wherein a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule is deleted and replaced with a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a T cell epitope, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.
2. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a CTL epitope.
3. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a helper T cell epitope.
4. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the CDR loop is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment).
5. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the CDR loop is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.
6. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4, wherein the CDR loop is CDR 2.
7. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4, wherein the CDR loop is CDR3 (D segment).

8. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, further comprising a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope, the B cell epitope having replaced another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule and has specificity as an epitope.

9. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the T cell epitope is a helper T cell epitope.

10. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope are located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and are selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.

11. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3.

12. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the CDR loop replaced by the T cell epitope is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 and the CDR loop replaced by the B cell epitope is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is

selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2 and CDR3.

13. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the T cell epitope is a viral epitope and is derivable from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

14. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8, wherein the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope are viral epitopes and are derivable from the same virus, the virus being selected from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

15. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

16. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8.

17. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 15 and a suitable carrier.

18. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 16 and a suitable carrier.

19. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 17.



20. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 18.

21. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule is selected from the group consisting of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

22. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises a constant domain of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a variable domain of a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

23. A purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

24. A expression vector into which the recombinant nucleic acid molecule of claim 23 is introduced.

25. A host cell transfected with the vector of claim 24.

26. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 which comprises deleting and replacing a portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a T cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing

the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.

27. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin of claim 8 which comprises deleting and replacing a first portion of a nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding the T cell epitope and deleting and replacing a second portion of a nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding the B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the first portion corresponding to a nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and the second portion corresponding to a nucleic acid sequence encoding another CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule encoded by the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the T cell epitope and the B cell epitope occur in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loops and have specificity as epitopes.

28. A chimeric immunoglobulin molecule produced by a recombinant DNA technology method comprising deleting a CDR loop of a parent immunoglobulin molecule and replacing the deleted CDR loop with a foreign peptide sequence corresponding to a B cell epitope, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the parent immunoglobulin molecule in place of the CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.

29. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the CDR loop is located in the heavy chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3 (D segment).

30. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the CDR loop is located in the light chain of the parent immunoglobulin molecule and is selected from the group consisting of CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3.

31. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 29, wherein the CDR loop is CDR2.

32. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 29, wherein the CDR loop is CDR3.

33. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the B cell epitope is a viral epitope and is derivable from the group consisting of respiratory syncytial virus, measles virus, rotavirus, hepatitis C virus, influenza virus, and human immunodeficiency virus.

34. A composition comprising the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28.

35. A vaccine comprising the composition of claim 34 and a suitable carrier.

36. A method of enhancing an immune response to a pathogen in a subject which comprises administering to the subject an effective amount of the vaccine of claim 35.

37. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule is selected from the group consisting of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

38. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28, wherein the parent immunoglobulin molecule comprises a constant domain of a human immunoglobulin molecule and a variable domain of a murine immunoglobulin molecule.

39. A purified and isolated recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28.

40. An expression vector into which the recombinant nucleic acid molecule of claim 39 is introduced.

41. A host cell transfected with the vector of claim 40.

42. A method of preparing the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 28 which comprises deleting and replacing a portion of nucleic acid sequence encoding the parent immunoglobulin molecule with a foreign nucleic acid sequence encoding a B cell epitope to form a chimeric nucleic acid sequence, the replaced nucleic acid sequence encoding a CDR loop of the parent immunoglobulin molecule, and then expressing chimeric immunoglobulin molecule encoded by the chimeric nucleic acid sequence, such that the B cell epitope occurs in the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in place of the deleted CDR loop and has specificity as an epitope.

43. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1.

44. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4.

45. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5.

46. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8.

47. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10.

48. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11.

49. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing into the animal a recombinant nucleic acid molecule encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12.

50. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

51. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

52. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

53. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

54. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10 into a cell *x vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

55. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

56. A method of expressing a chimeric immunoglobulin molecule in an animal, comprising introducing a recombinant nucleic acid encoding the chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12 into a cell *ex vivo*, and then introducing the cell into the animal.

57. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 1 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

58. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 4 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

59. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 5 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

60. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 8 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

61. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 10 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

62. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 11 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.

63. The chimeric immunoglobulin molecule of claim 12 which is mildly derivatized with polyethylene glycol.



1/33

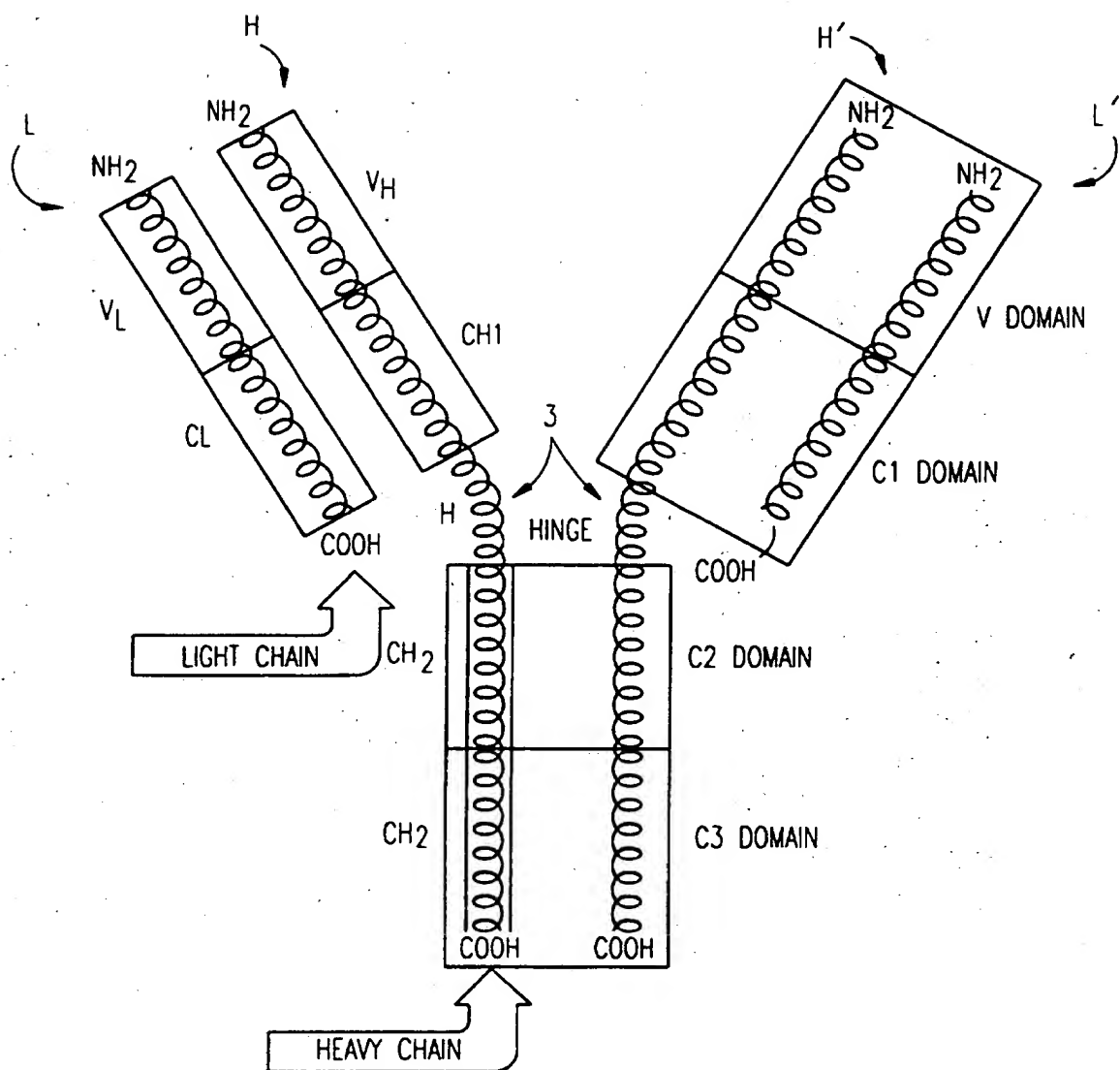


FIG.1A

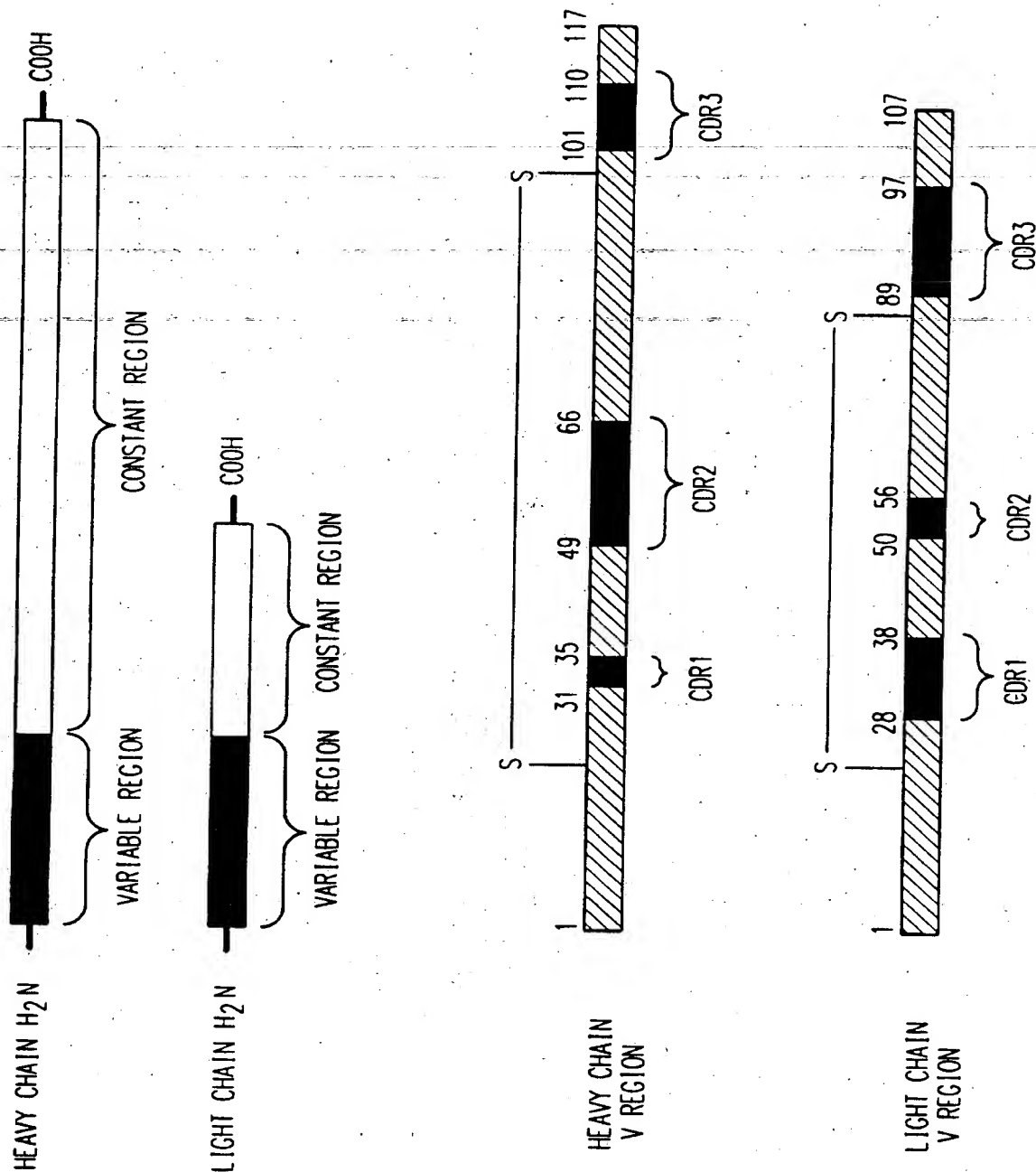


FIG.1B

3/33

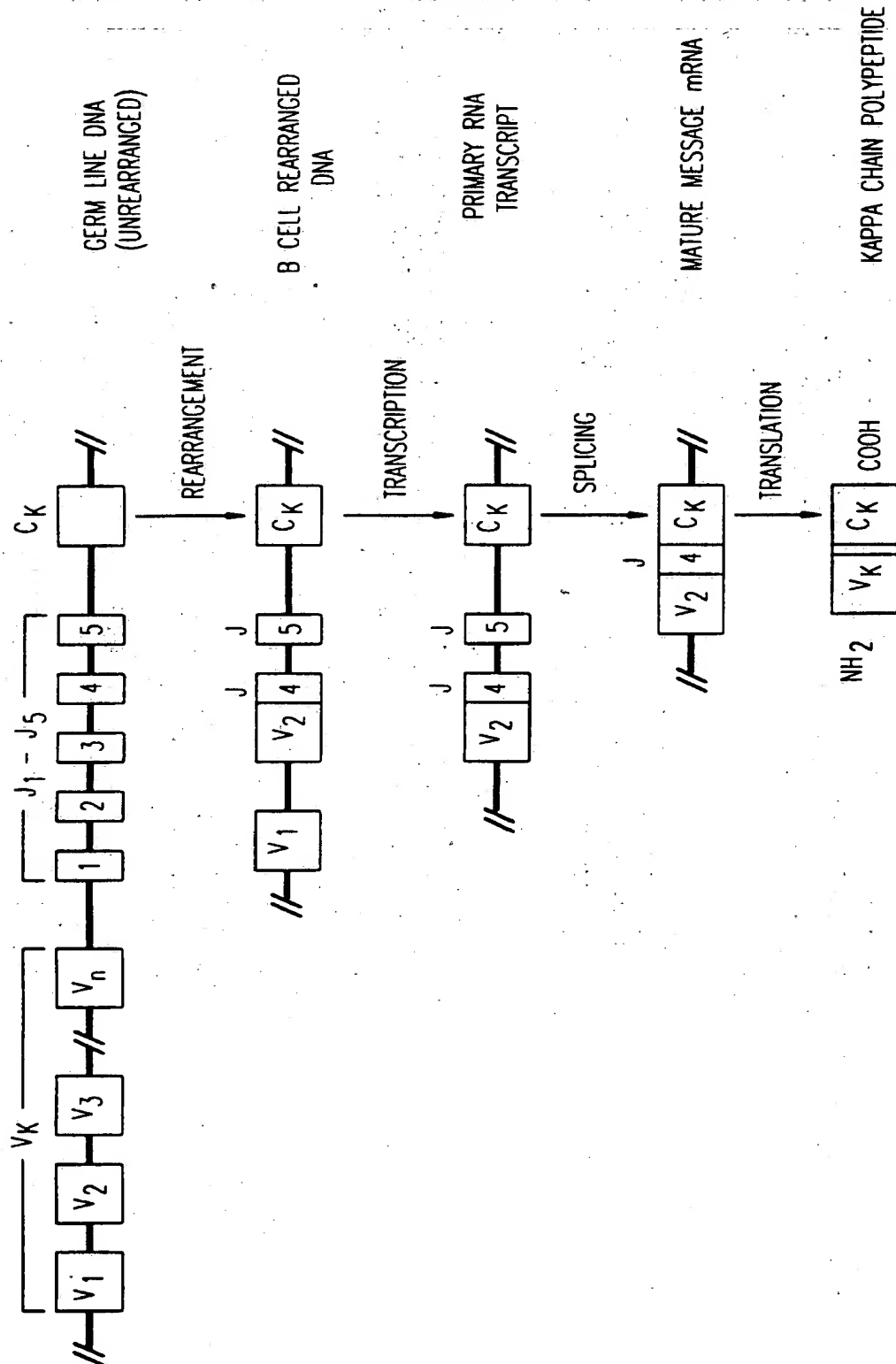


FIG.1C

4/33

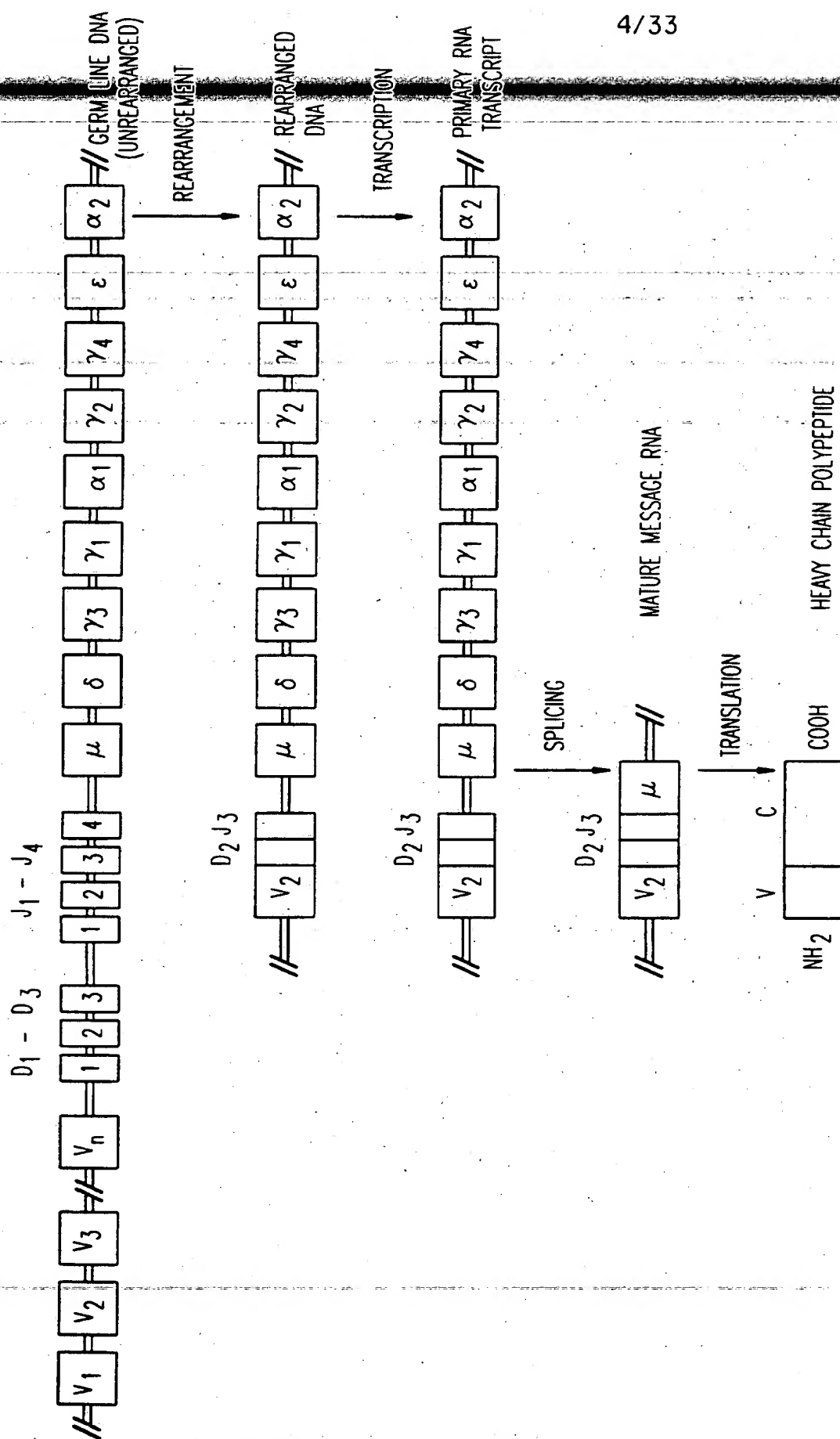


FIG.1D

5/33

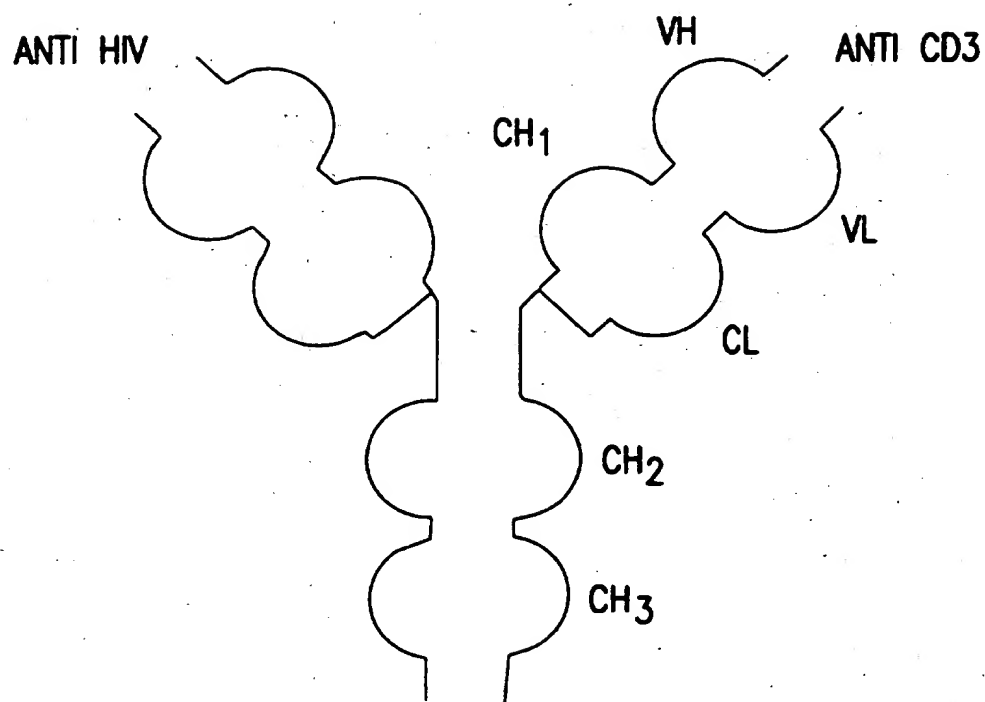


FIG.2

6/33

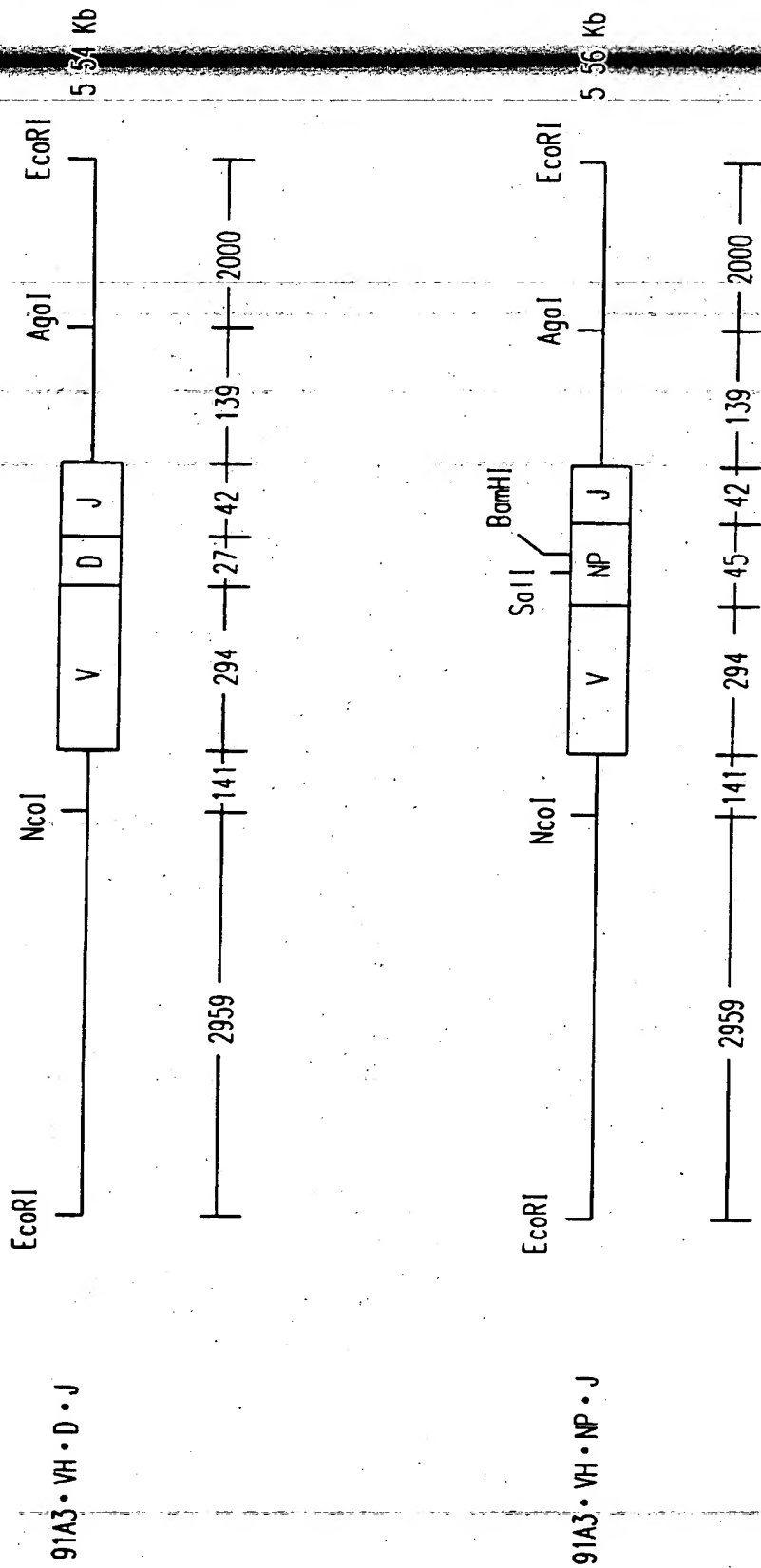


FIG.3

7/33

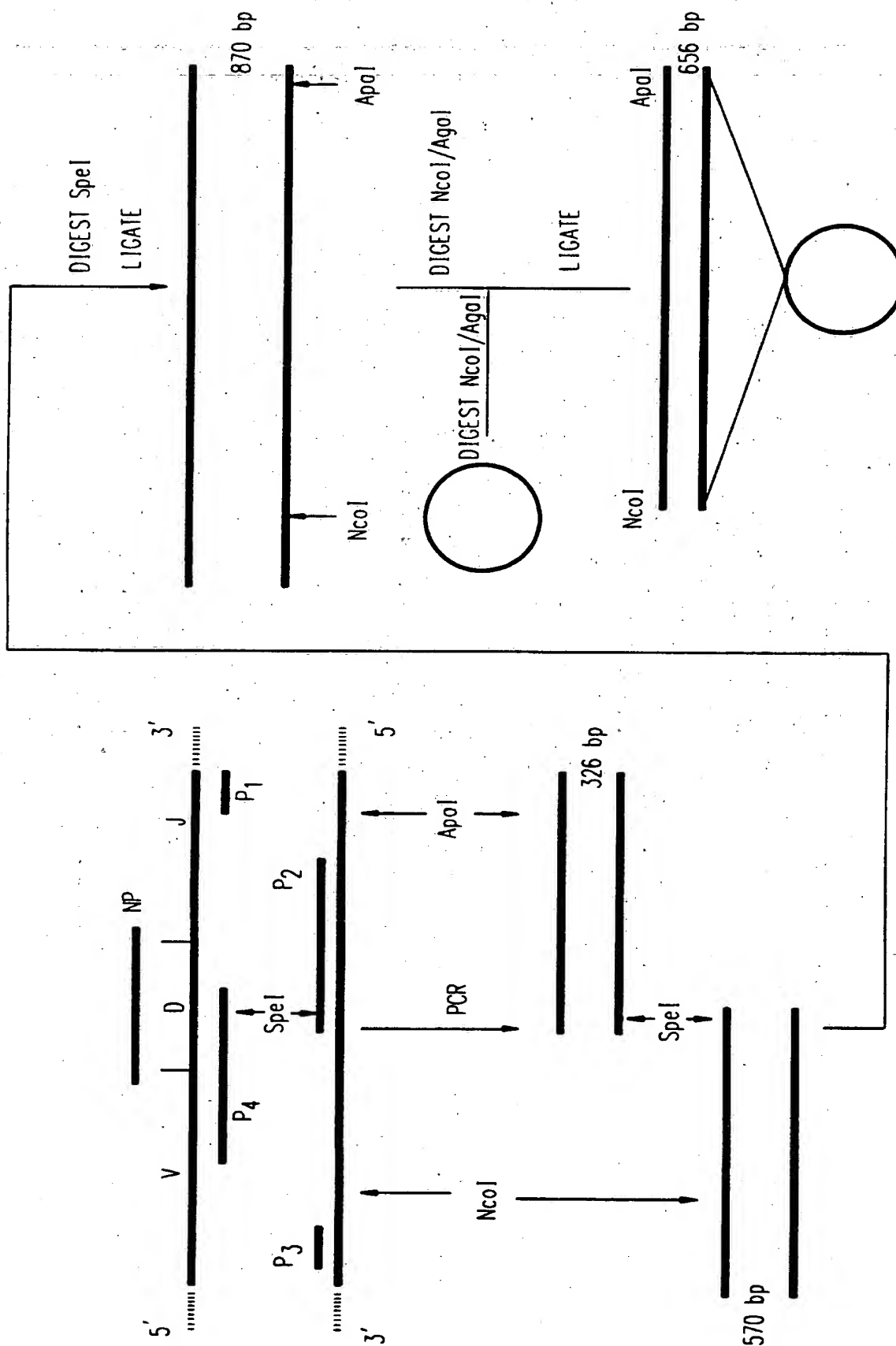


FIG.4

8/33

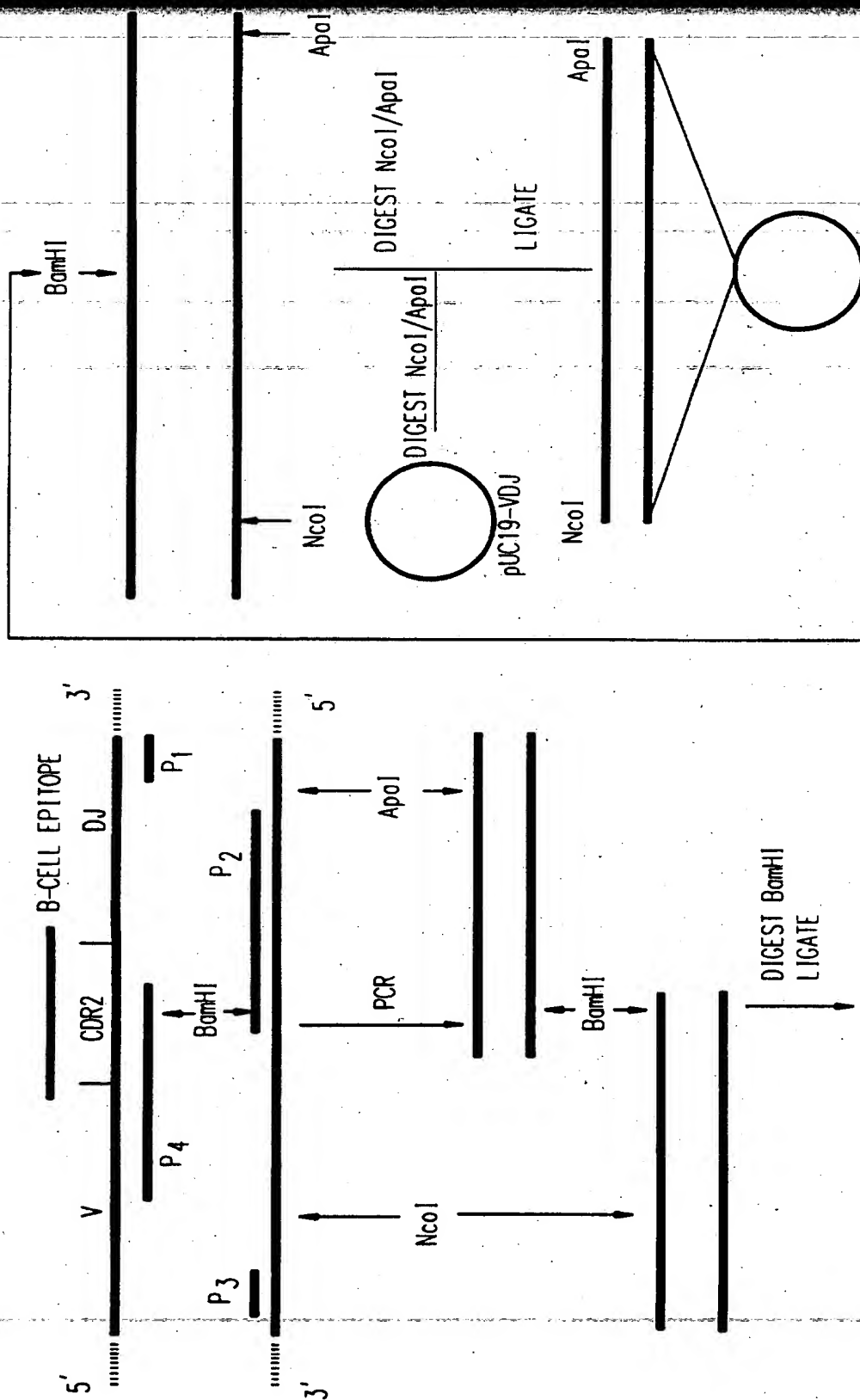
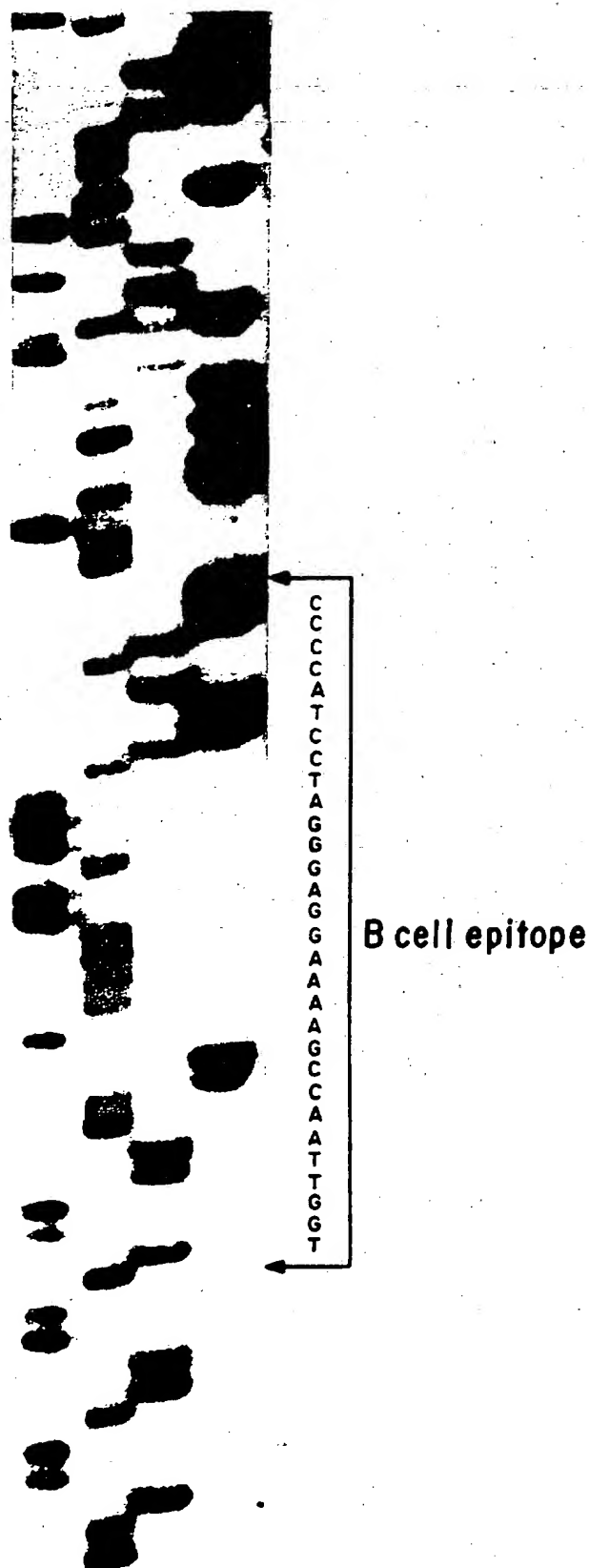


FIG.5



9/33



**FIG. 6**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

10/33

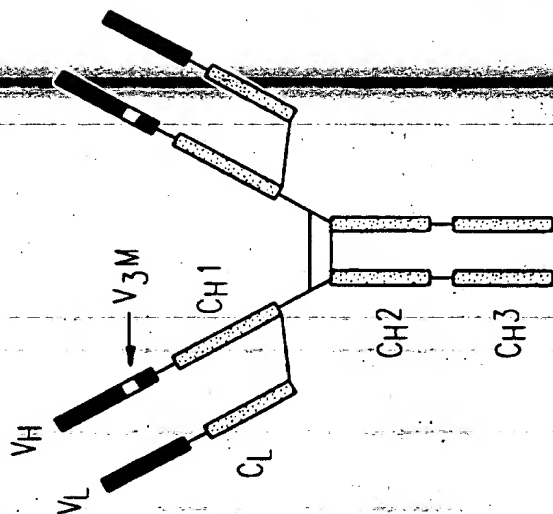


FIG. 7C

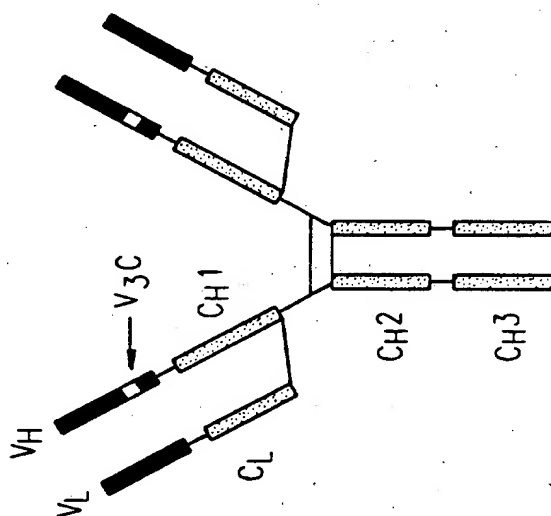


FIG. 7B

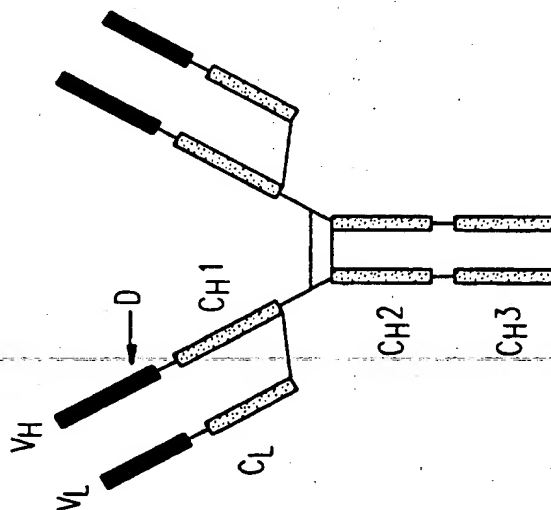


FIG. 7A

11/33

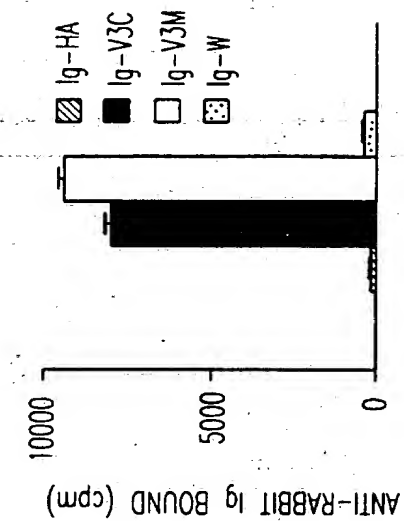


FIG. 7D

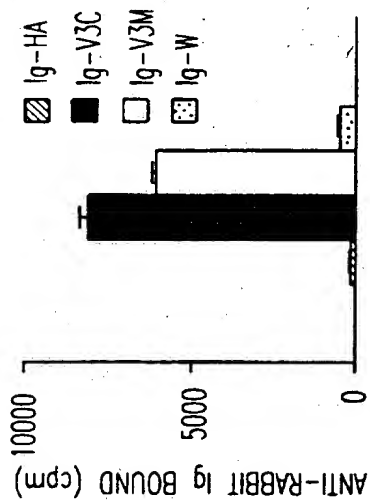


FIG. 7E

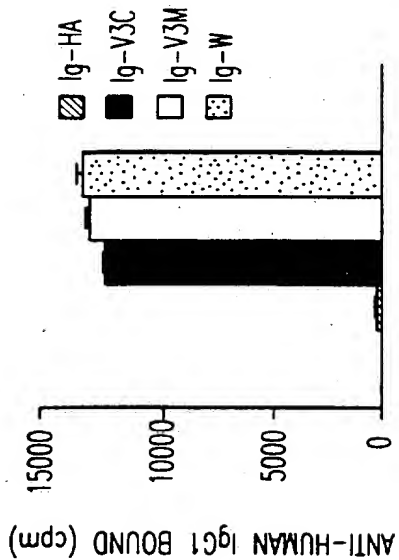


FIG. 7F

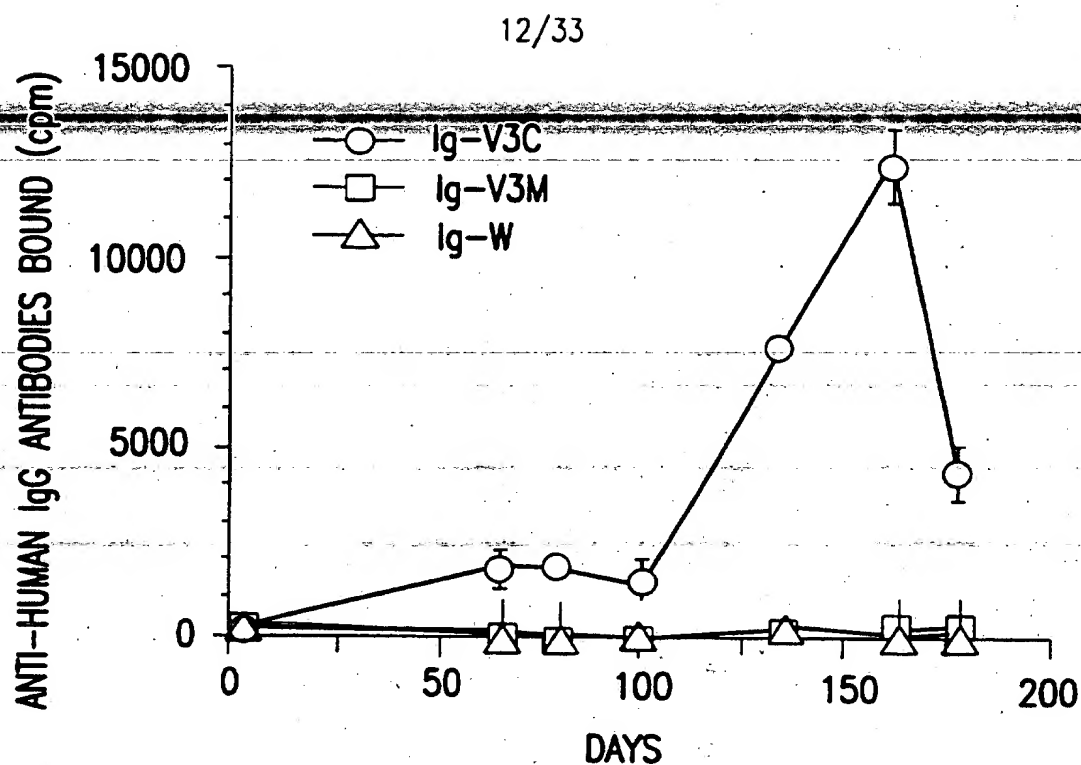


FIG. 8A

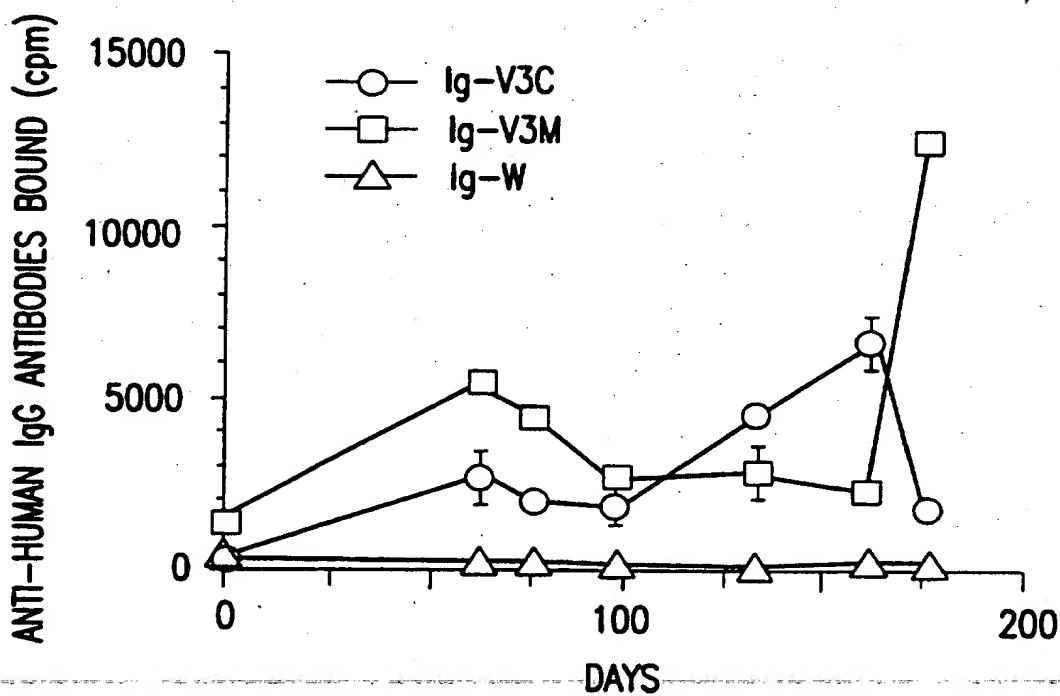


FIG 8B

13/33

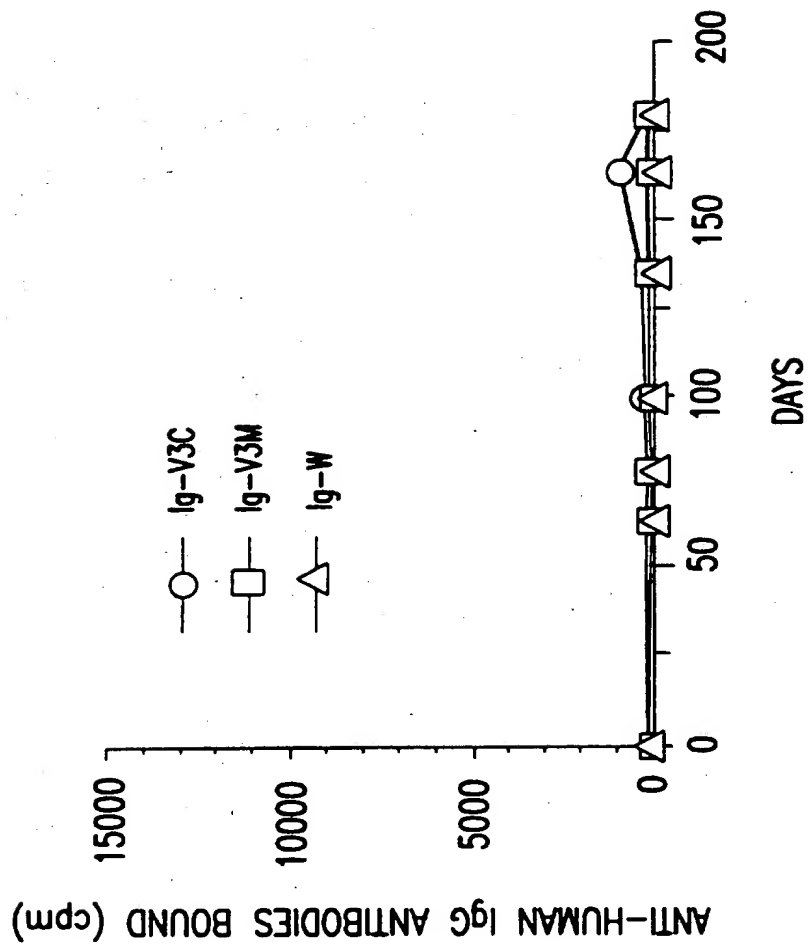


FIG.8C

14/33

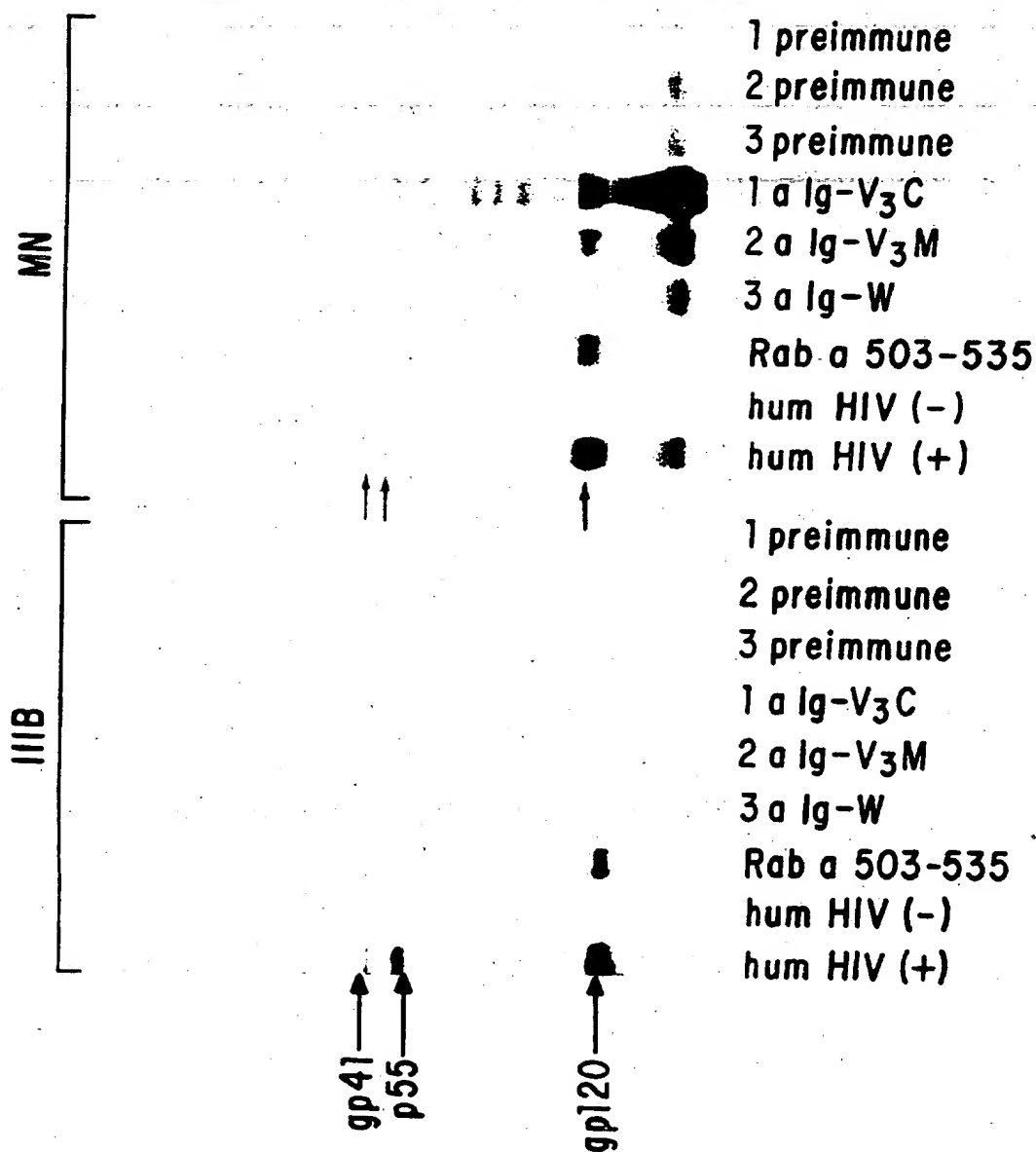


FIG. 9

15/33

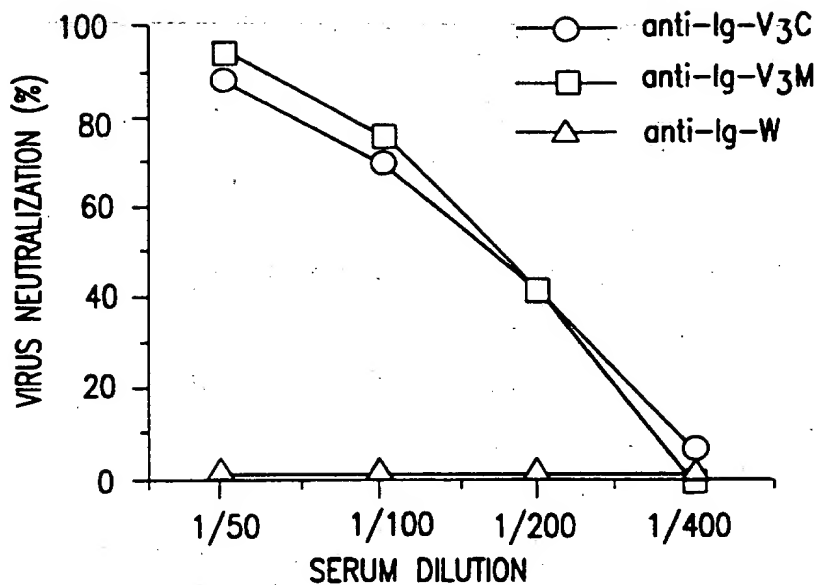


FIG.10A

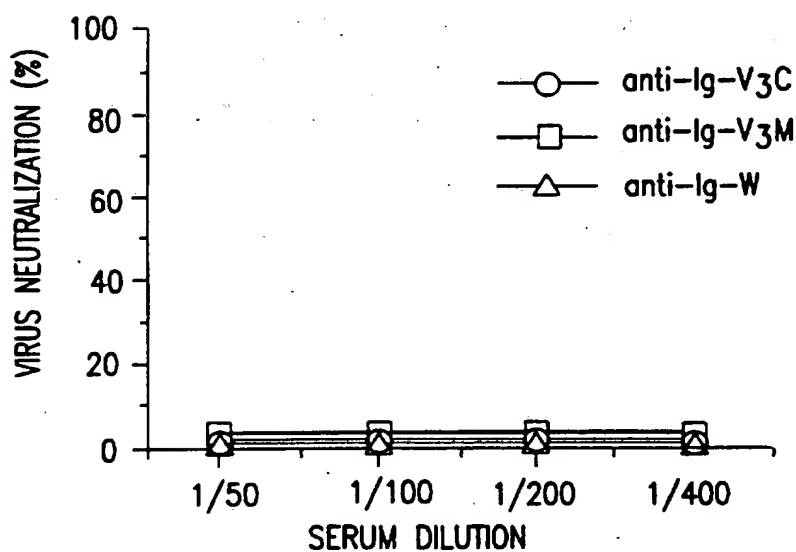


FIG.10B

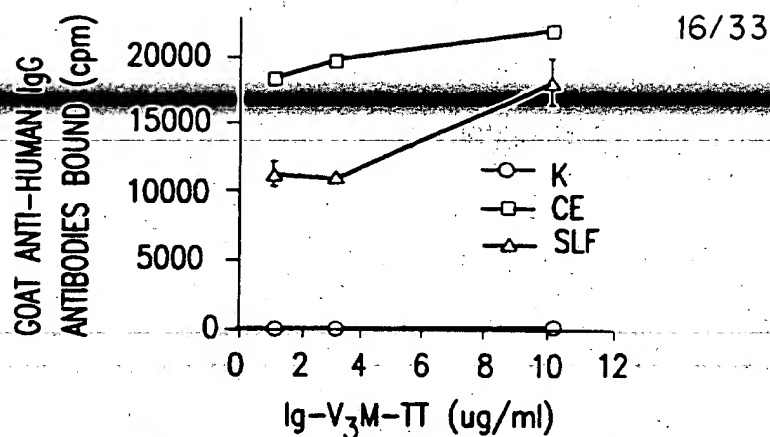


FIG. 11A

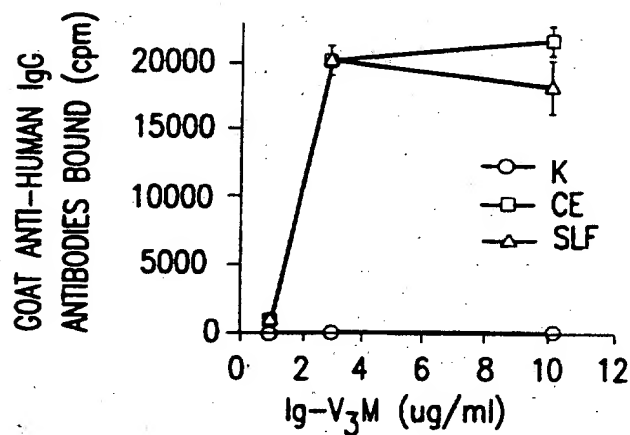


FIG. 11B

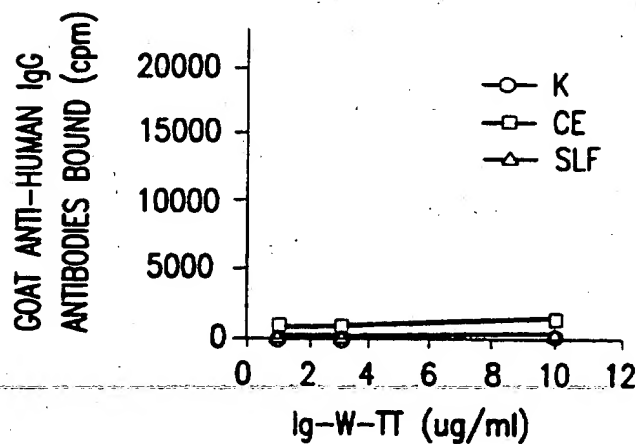


FIG. 11C



17/33

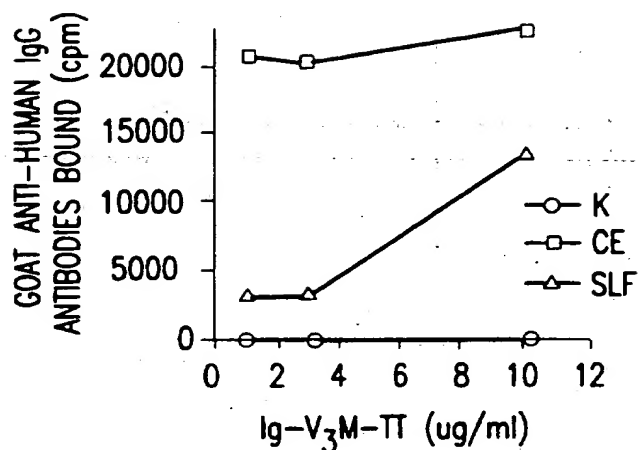


FIG. 11D

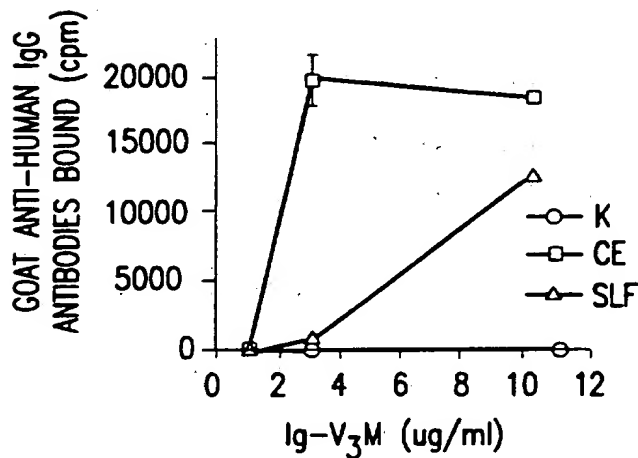


FIG. 11E

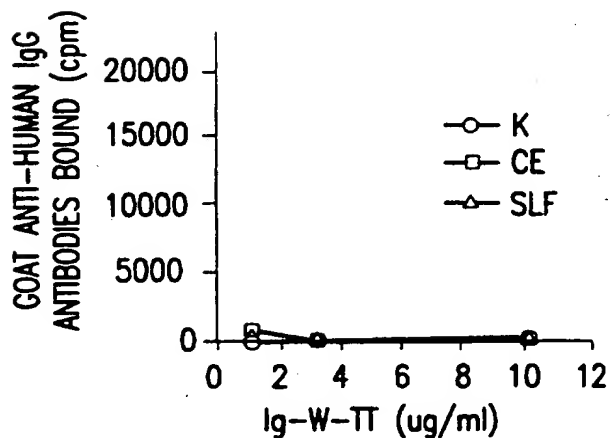


FIG. 11F

18/33

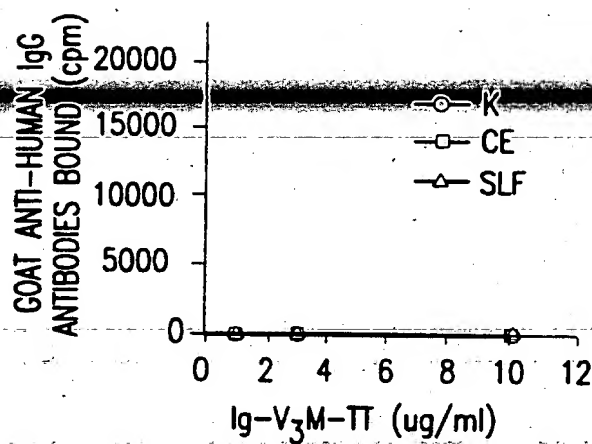


FIG. 11G

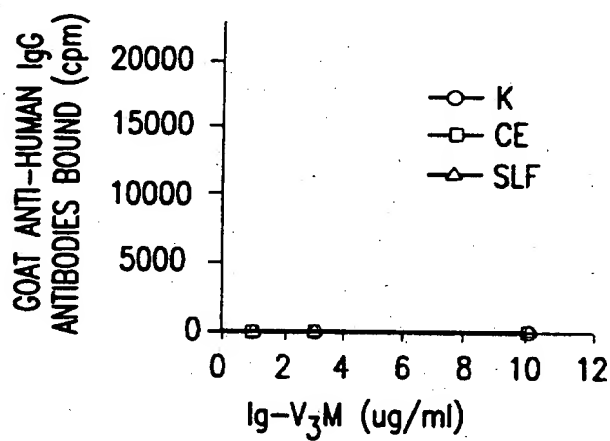


FIG. 11H

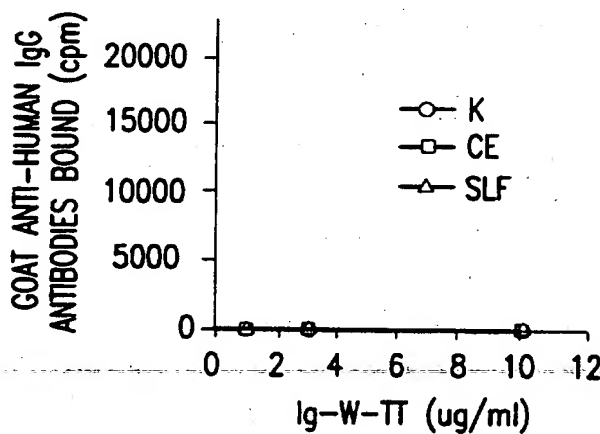


FIG. 11I

19/33

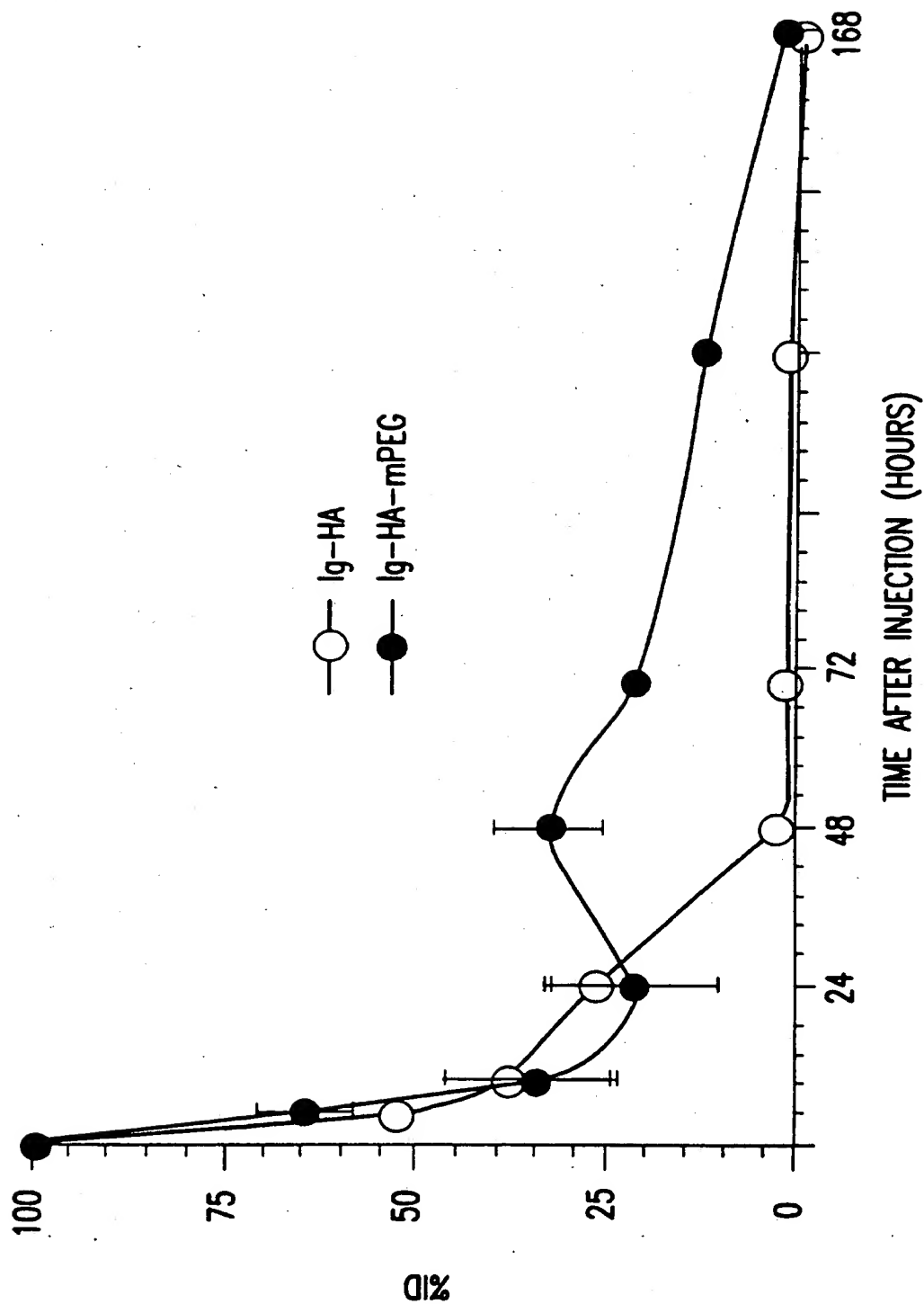


FIG.12

20/33

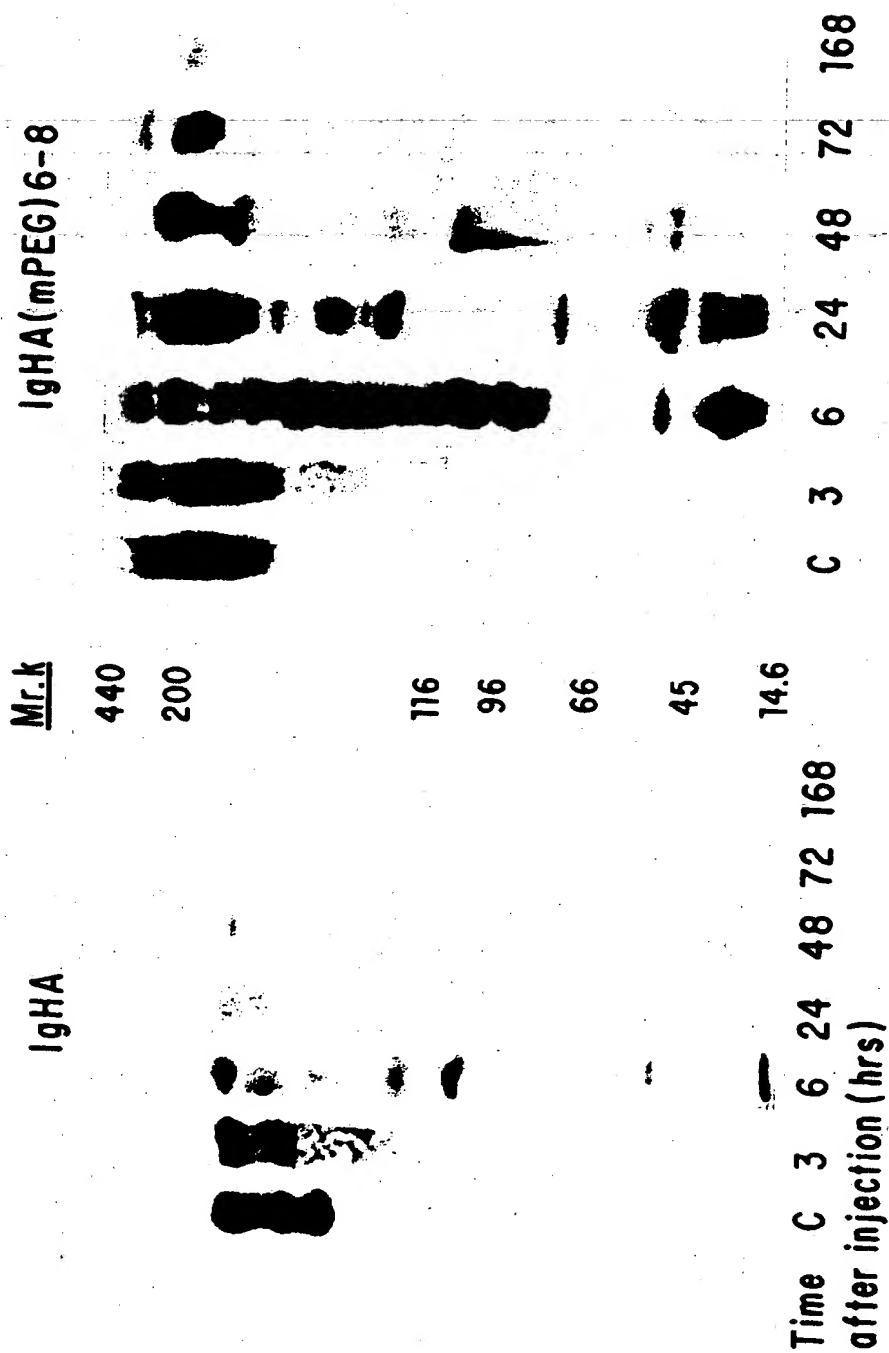


FIG. 13

21/33

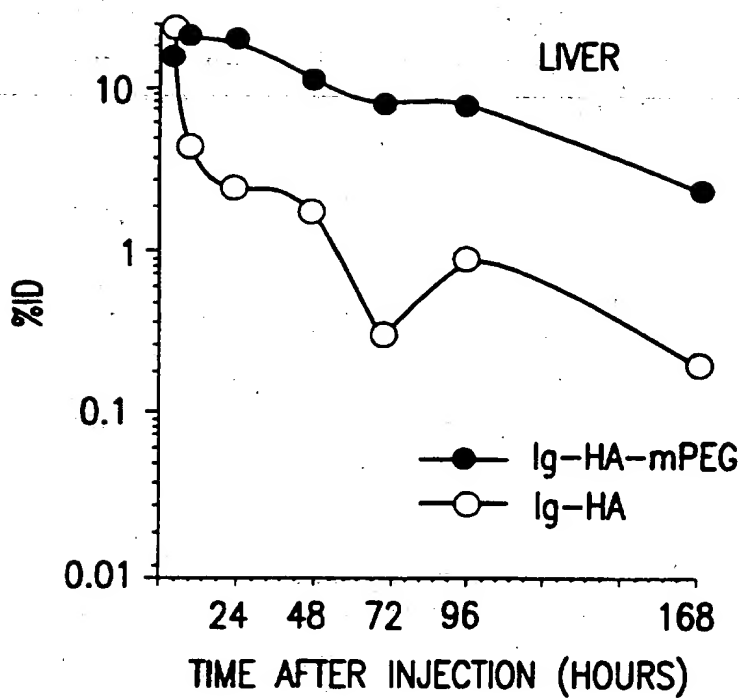


FIG.14A

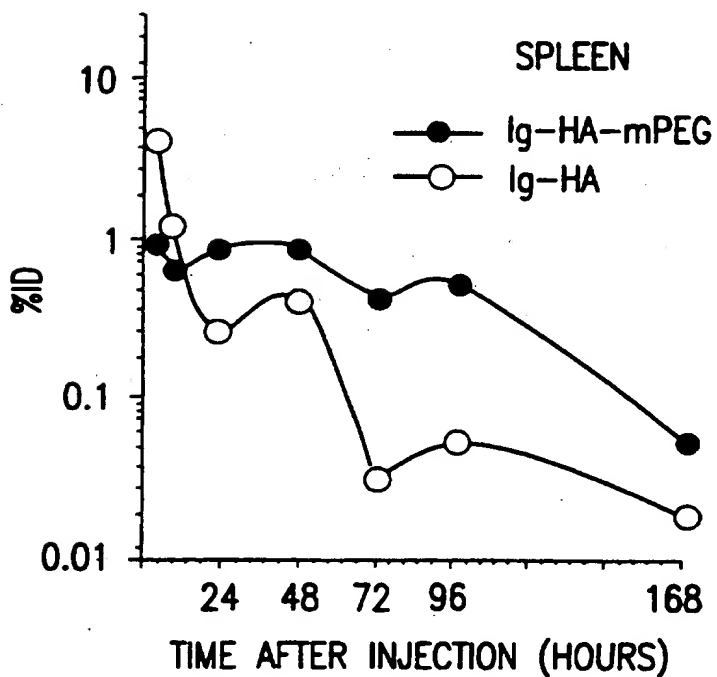


FIG.14B

22/33

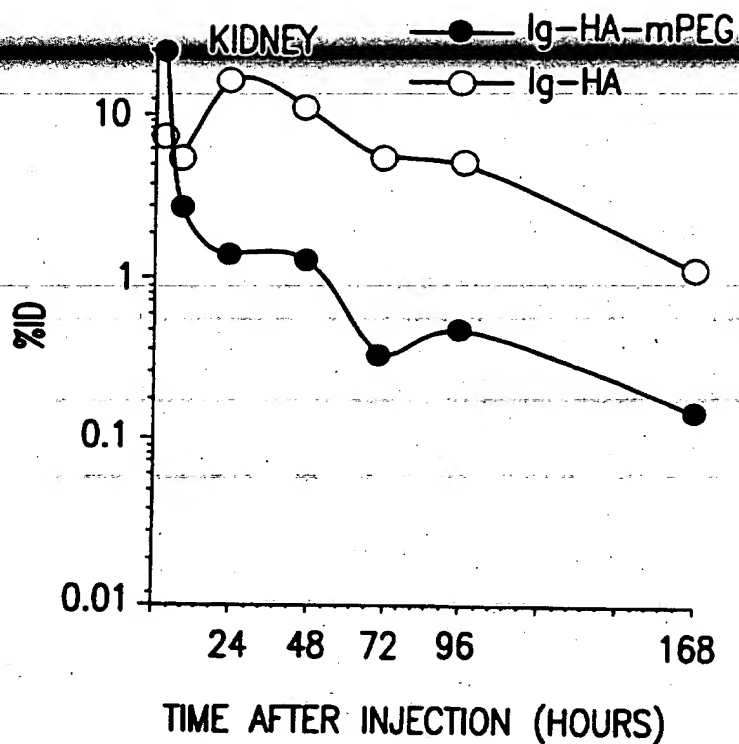


FIG.14C

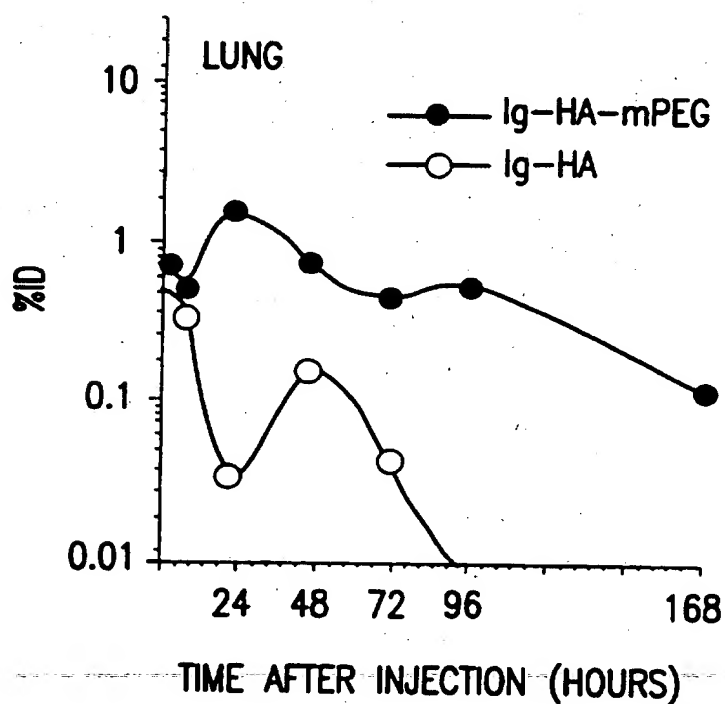


FIG.14D

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

23/33

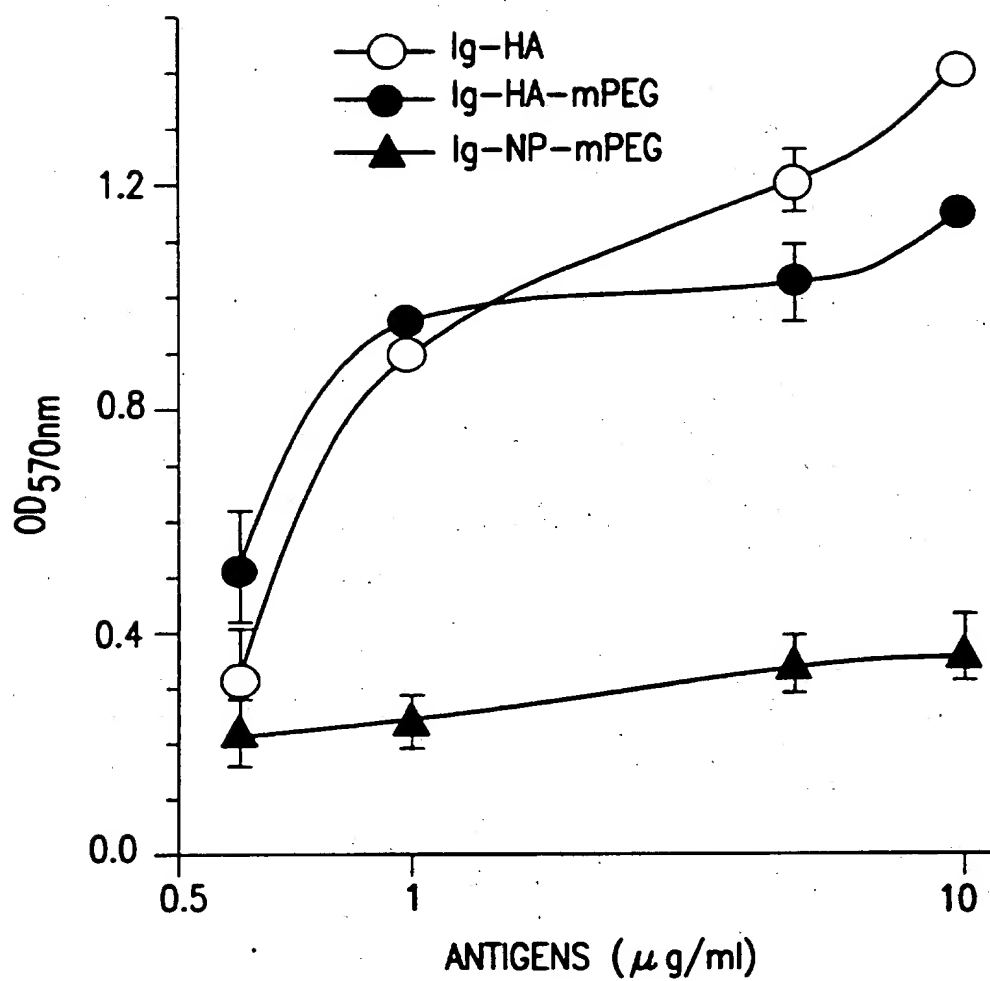


FIG.15

24/33

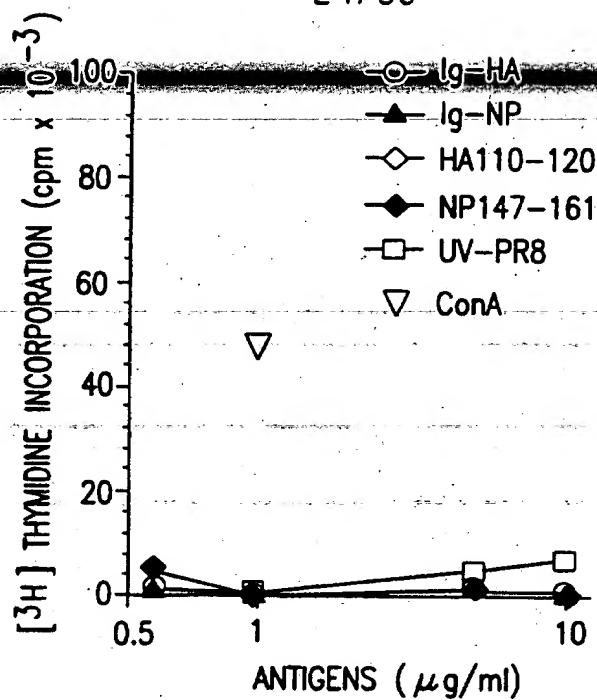


FIG. 16A

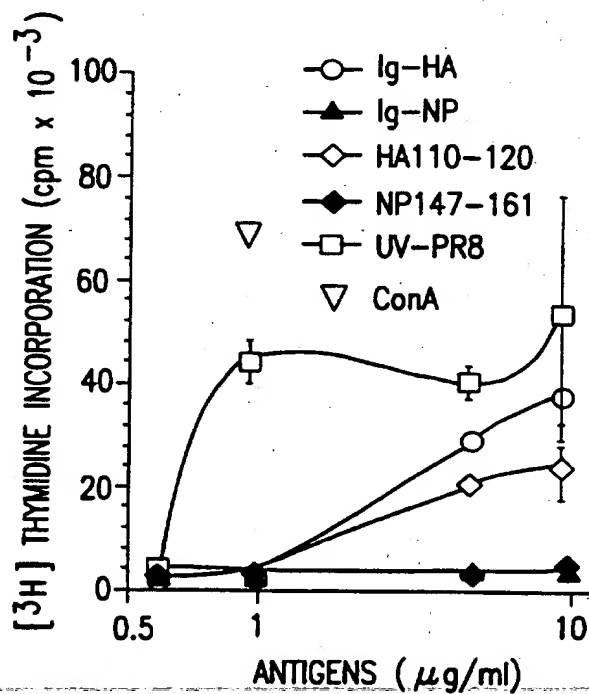


FIG. 16B



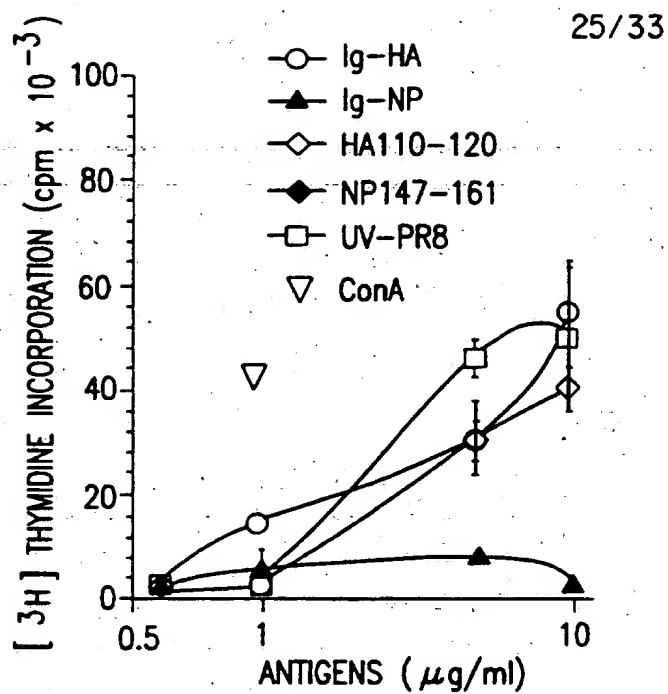


FIG.16C

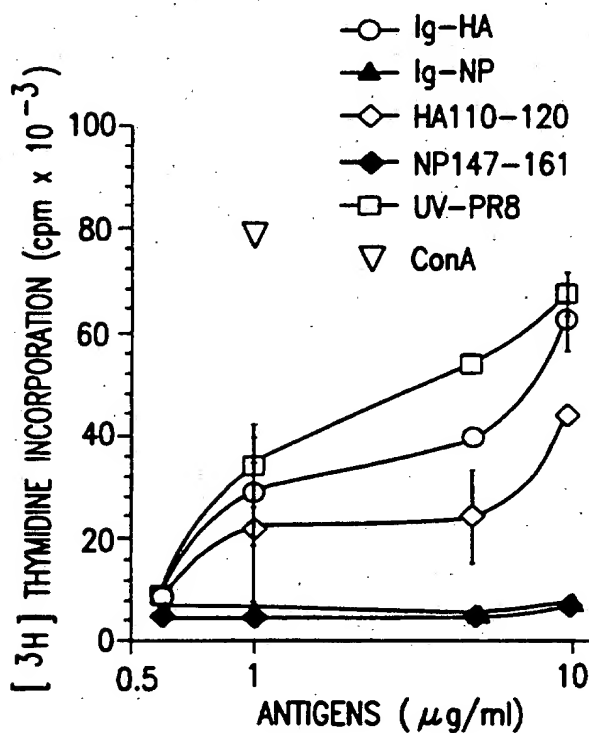


FIG.16D

26/33

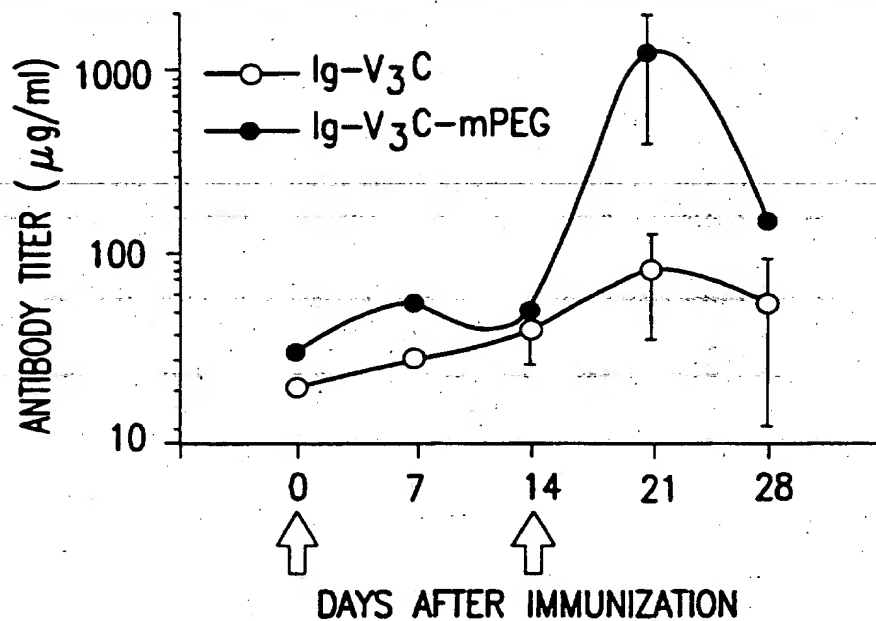


FIG.17A

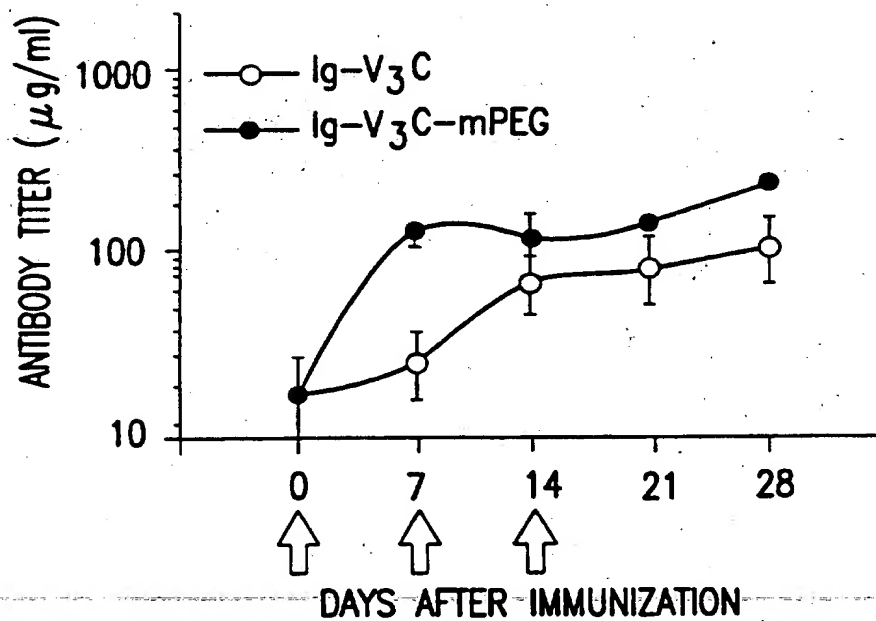


FIG.17B

27/33

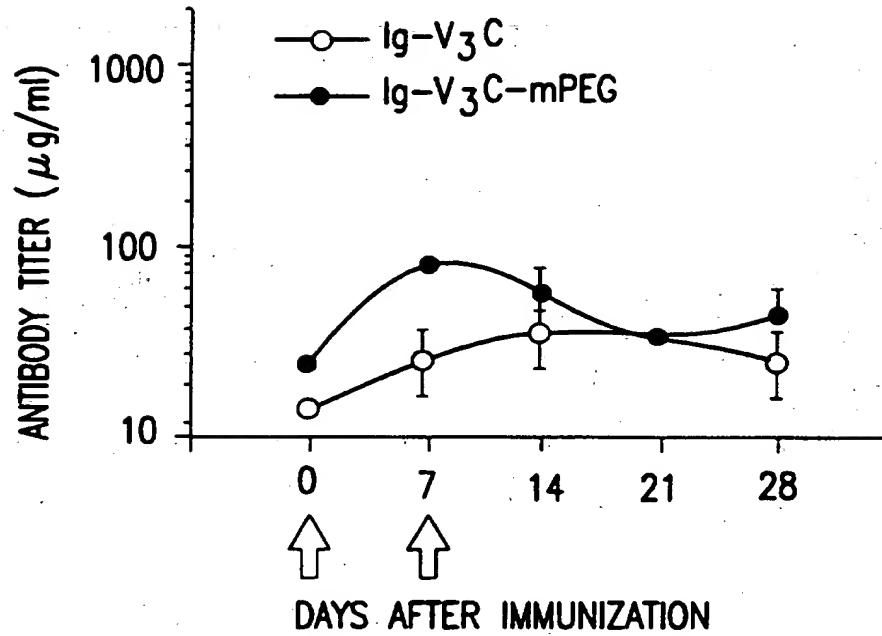


FIG.17C

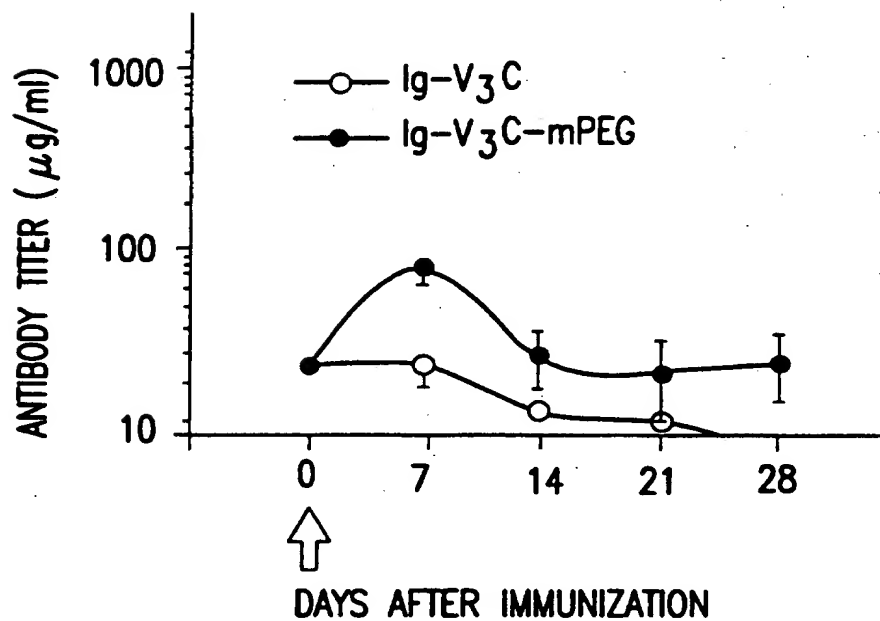


FIG.17D

28/33

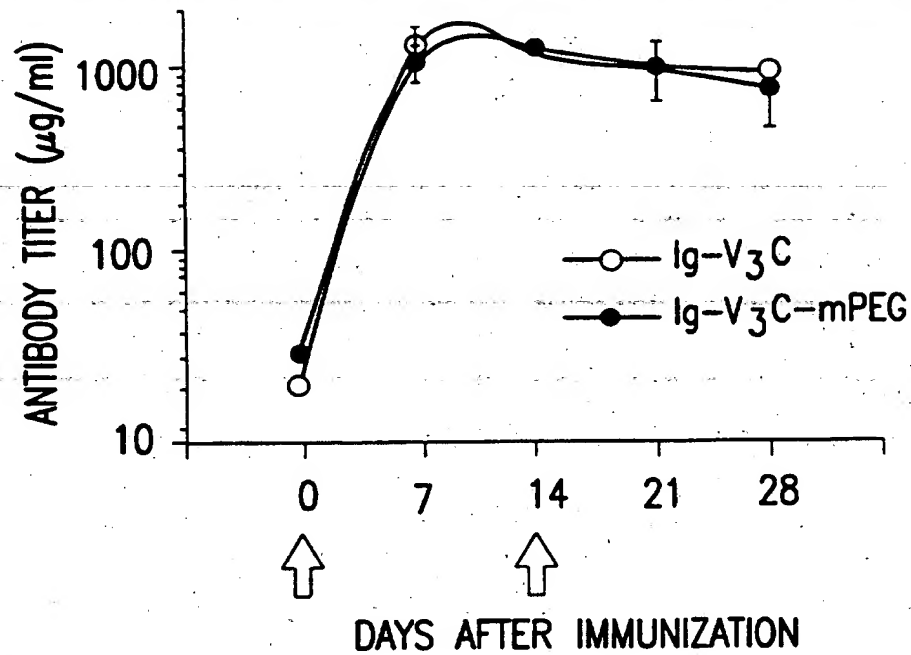


FIG.17E

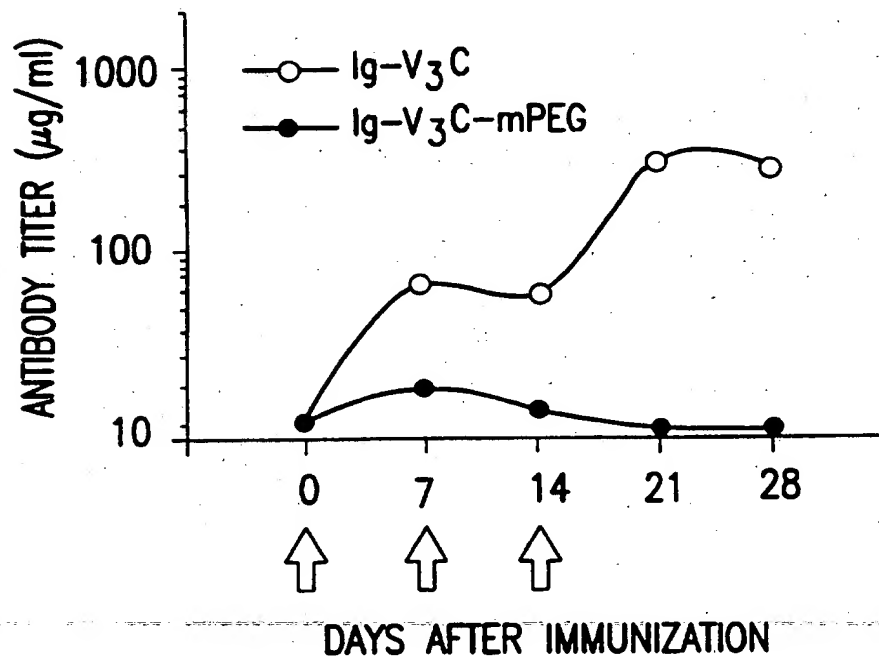


FIG.17F

29/33

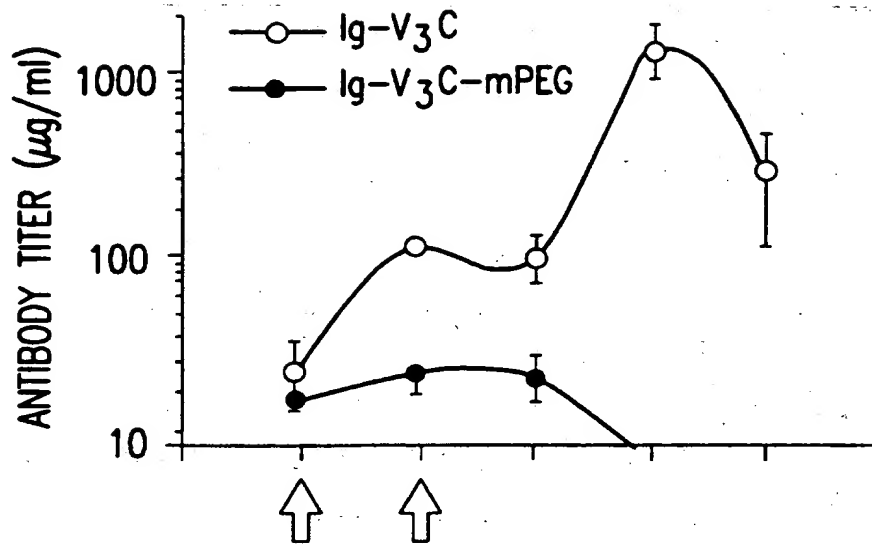


FIG.17G

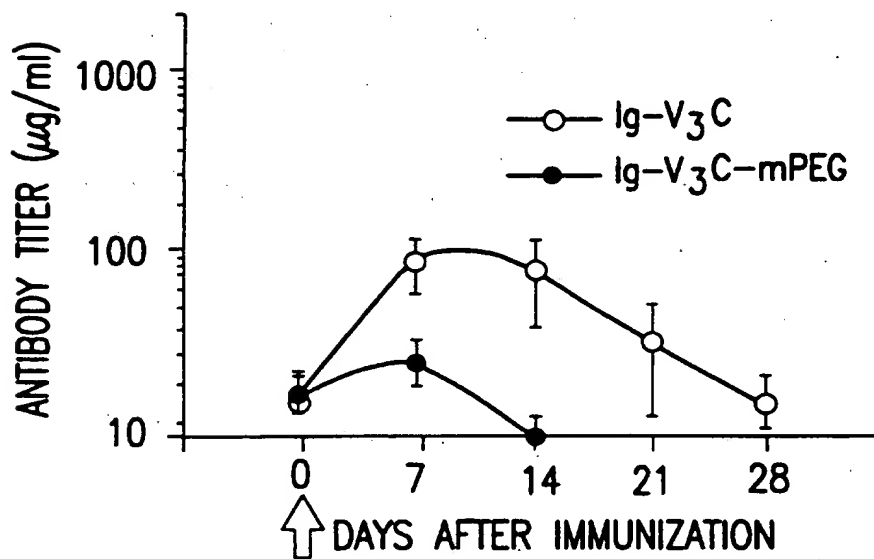


FIG.17H

30/33

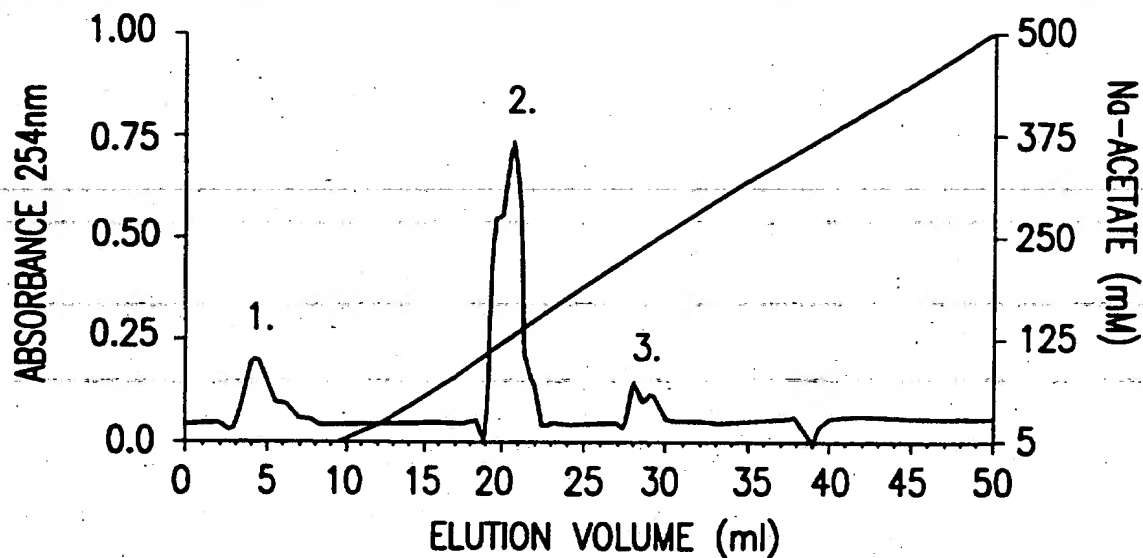


FIG. 18A

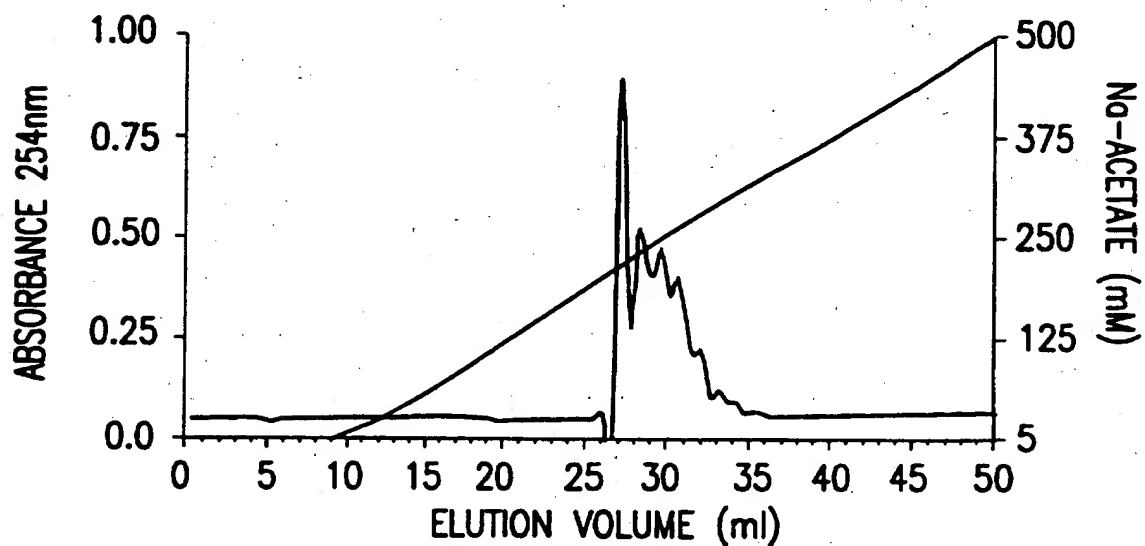
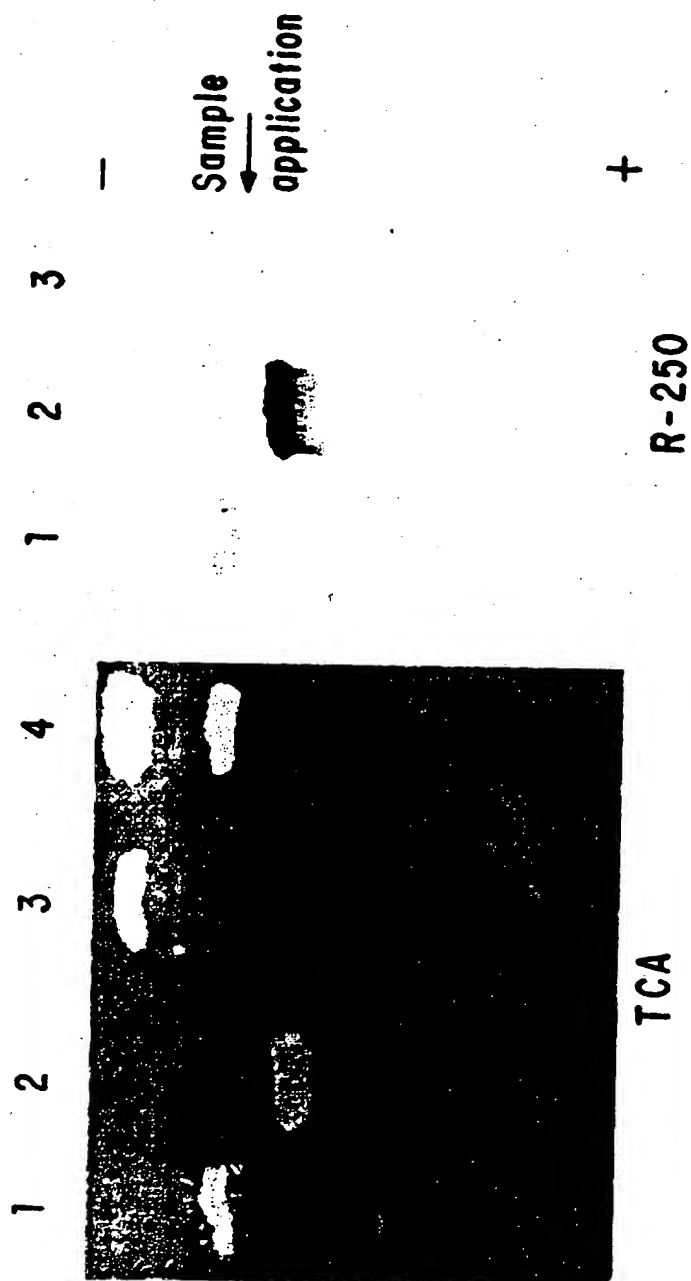


FIG. 18B

31/33



32/33

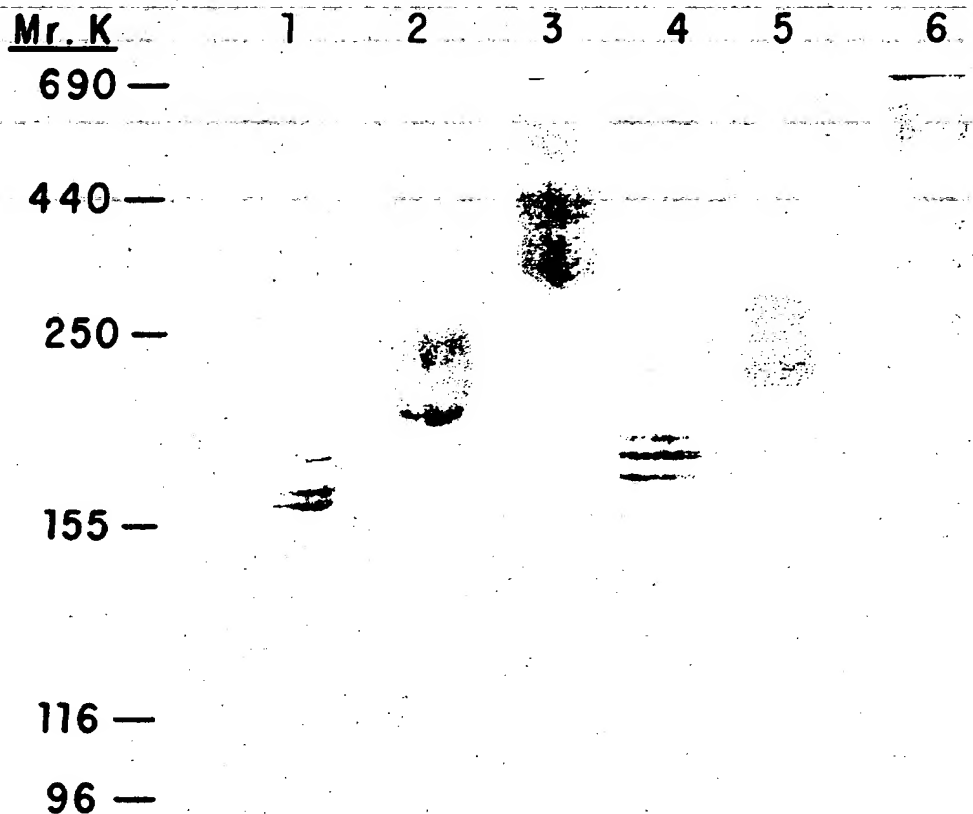


FIG. 20



33/33

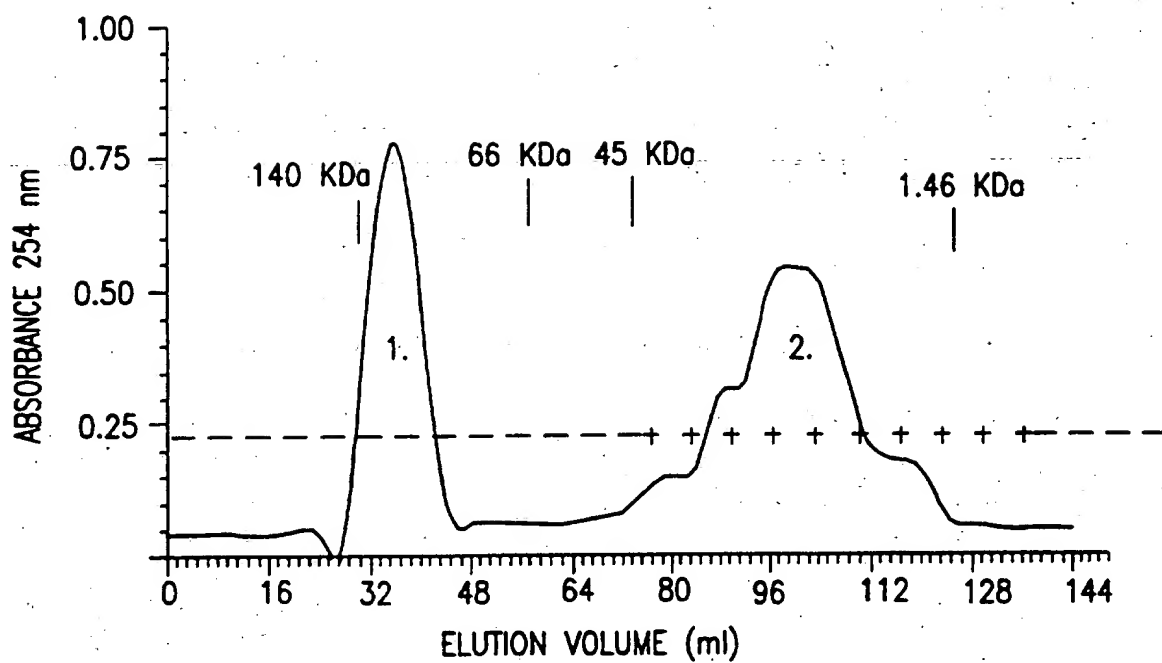


FIG.21A

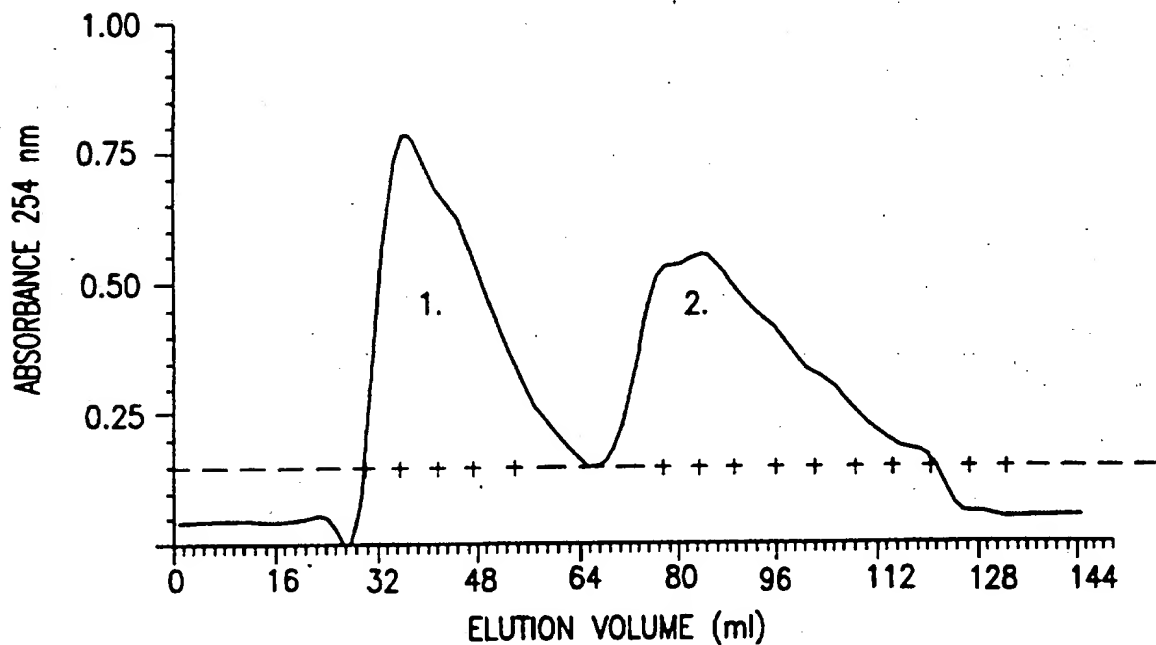


FIG.21B

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US95/16718

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(6) : C12P 21/08, 21/04; A61K 39/395, 39/42; C12N 1/21; A01N 31/08

US CL : 530/387.3; 424/133.1; 435/69.6, 252.33; 514/44

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 530/387.3; 424/133.1; 435/69.6, 252.33; 514/44

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, DIALOG, STN, protein and DNA databases

search terms: immunoglobulin, T cell epitope, B cell epitope, antibody

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

| Category*      | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No.   |
|----------------|---|---|
| X<br>----<br>Y | International Immunology, Volume 5, Number 10, issued 1993, Kuzu et al, "Priming of Cytotoxic T Lymphocytes at various stages of ontogeny with transfectoma cells expressing a chimeric Ig heavy chain gene bearing an influenza virus nucleoprotein peptide", pages 1301-1307, see page 1302, second column. | 1-2, 4-5, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23-26, 43-45, 50-52, 57-59<br>----<br>3, 6-12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 27-42, 46-49, 53-56, 60-63 |

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.☐ See patent family annex.

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| * Special categories of cited documents:  | "T" | later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  |
| "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  |     |  |
| "E" earlier document published on or after the international filing date  | "X" | document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone   |
| "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) | "Y" | document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art |
| "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  |     |  |
| "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed  | "&" | document member of the same patent family  |

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 MARCH 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

11 APR 1996

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile N (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

JULIE REEVES

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US95/16718

| C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Category*   | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages   | Relevant to claim No.  |
| X<br>---<br>Y   | International Review of Immunology, Volume 10, issued 1993, Zaghouni et al, "Engineered Immunoglobulin Molecules as Vehicles for T cell Epitopes", pages 265-278, see Figure 1 and pages 276-277.  | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21, 23-26<br>---<br>6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 22, 27-63 |
| X<br>---<br>Y   | Science, Volume 259, issued 08 January 1993, Zaghouni et al, "Presentation of a viral T cell epitope expressed in the CDR3 region of a self immunoglobulin molecule", pages 224-227, see pages 224-226.  | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21-26<br>---<br>6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 27-63         |
| X<br>---<br>Y   | Journal of Immunology, Volume 148, Number 11, issued 01 June 1992, Zaghouni et al, "Cells expressing an H chain Ig gene carrying a viral T cell epitope are lysed by specific cytolytic T cells", pages 3604-3609, see pages 3604 and 3607-3609. | 1-5, 7, 13, 15,<br>17, 19, 21-26<br>---<br>6, 8-12, 14, 16,<br>18, 20, 27-63         |
| Y   | Cancer Research, Volume 51, issued 15 August 1991, Kitamura et al, "Chemical Engineering of the Monoclonal Antibody A7 by Polyethylene Glycol for Targeting Cancer Chemotherapy", pages 4310-4315, see pages 4313-4315.                          | 57-63  |
| Y   | Immunology Letters, Volume 15, issued 1987, Wilkinson et al, "Tolerogenic polyethylene glycol derivatives of xenogeneic monoclonal immunoglobulins", pages 17-22, see page 21.   | 57-63  |

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US95/16718

## BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

~~This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.~~

Group I, claims 1-42, drawn to a chimeric immunoglobulin (Ig) vaccine, method of making and method of use by administering the chimeric Ig as a vaccine.

Group II, claims 43-56, drawn to a method of ex vivo gene therapy to express chimeric Ig cDNA in a patient.

Group III, claims 57-63, drawn to a product of the poly ethylene glycol derivatized Ig chimeric molecule.

The inventions listed as Groups I, II and III do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: Group II has the special technical feature of the expression of the Ig cDNA by ex vivo gene therapy that is not a feature of Group I or Group III. Group III has the special technical feature of the poly ethylene glycol derivation of the chimeric Ig that results in the special property of augmenting the immune response so that it need not be administered with an adjuvant and this special property is not found in Groups I and II. Accordingly, the claims are not so linked by a special technical feature within the meaning of PCT Rule 13.2 so as to form a single inventive concept.